We lite F/imandicien , 1) $) \widetilde{R}\left(C_{C}\right.$

M) U I C K,


 (i) IV rimem ine SThluint (i彡y. GIORGIO ANTONIOTEO,
 Vol:I

## S U B S CRIBERS N A MES.

A.

D
R. Arne.
$M r$. Avifon of Newcaftle.
$M r$. Francis Afhbey.
Mr. Allen, Organift of Southwell.

## B.

Henry Bridgman, $E f q$;
Mrs. Bridgman.
John Bagnal, E/q;
Robert Bell, E/q;

- Barnard, Efq;

Captain Thomas Bourne.
Rev. Mr. Bugg.
Rev. Mr. Bowman:
Rev. Mr. Brailsford.
Dr. Boyce, Organift and Compofer to bis Majefty, and Mafter of bis Majefy's Band of Mufick.
Mr. Butler, Organift of St. Margaret's, Weftminfter.
Mr. Burton, 2 Books.
$M r$. Charles Burney.
Mr. Thomas Bower.
Mr. Berfanti.
C.

Robert Copley, $E \int q$;
Rev. Mr. Cole.
Mr. Cooke, Mafter of the Cboirifters, and one of the Gentlemen of the Choir of Weftminfter.
Mr. Cox, of the Gentlemen of bis Majefly's Cbapel Royal.
D.

Mr. Dodd.
$M r$. Thomas Saunders Dupuis.
F.

Mifs Ford.
G.

Rev. Mr. Giborne, late Prebendary of Durham.

Rev. Mr. Graham, Fellow of King's-College, Cambridge.
Mr. Gardiner.
Mr. Garth, of Durham.
Mr. Gladwin.

## H.

John Hewett, $E / q$;
Mrs. Hewett.
Rev. Mr. Hewett.
John Hawkins, $E f q$;
Charles Grave Hudfon, $E \int q$;
Francis Hurt, $E / q$;

- Hutchinfon, $E \int q$; of Chrift's College, Cambridge.
Mrs. Hallows.
Rev. Mr. Hallows.
Dr. Hayes, Profeffor of Mufick at Oxford.
$M r$. John Hutchinfon.
$M r$. Hargrave.
Mr. Samuel Howard, Organift of St. Brides and St. Clements-Danes.
Mr. Herletine, Organift at Durham.
Mr. Hawdon, Organift at Hull.


## 1.

Dr. Johnfon, of Loughborough.
Mr. John Johnfon, 6 Books.

## L.

Her Grace the Dutchefs of Leeds.
Rev. Mr. Ludlam, Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.
Rcv. Mr. Lobb, Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.
Mr. Layland, Orgenifl of Chefterfield.
M.

Charles Mellifh, Efq;
Rev. Mr. Mafon.
Rev. Mr. Mudge.
Mr. Alexis Magito.
Mi. Miller, Organif of Doncafter.

Dr.

## N.

Dr. Nares, Organit and Compofer to bis Majefy, and Mafter of the Cbildren of bis Majefty's Chapel Royal.
Mr. Neville, of Jefus College, Cambridge.

## P.

Robert Price, $E / q ;$
Mifs Plumtree.
Rev. Mr. Pixell.
Rev. Mr. Peggé.
Samuel Pegge, Efq;
Mr. Porter.
Signor Pafqualino.
Signor Pafferini.

## R.

Dr. Ridlington, Fellow of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, and Profeffor of Civil Law.
Dr. Randall, Profeffor of Mufic at Cambridge.
Thomas Robinfon, Efq; of Chrift's College, Cambridge.
Mr. Rogers, Organift of Briftol.
Mr. Rayner, Organift of Lincoln.

## S.

Earl of Scarborough.
Countefs of Scarborough.
Hon. Charles Fitzroy Scudamore, $E / q$;
Sir George Saville, Bart. 20 Books.
Gervafe Scroope, $E / q$;
Robert Sutton, $E / q$;
Mifs Arabella Sutton.
Rev. Dr. Smith, Mafter of Trinity College, Cambridge.
Rev. Mr. Skynner, Public Orator of the Univerfity of Cambridge.

Rev. Mr. Shepherd, Fellow of Chrift's College, Cambridge.
Mr. Stockdale, of Emanuel College, Cambridge.
Rev. Mr. Stacey.
Mr. Savage, Gentleman of bis Majefty's Cbapel Royal, and Almoner of St. Paul's Cathedral. Mr. John Chriftopher Smith.
John Smith, M. D. of St. Mary Hall, Oxford.
Mr. Stanley, Organift of the Temple and St. Andrew's.
Mr. Scamadine.
Mr. Francis Sharpe.
Mr. Sharpe.
Mr. Benjamin Steele.
T.

Dr. Robert Taylor.
Edward Toms, Efq;
Mr. Turner.
Mr. Tiffington, 2 Books.
V.

Mr. John Valentine, of Leicefter.
W.

The Hon. Mr. Ward, 2 Books.
Benedict Willis, $E / q_{q}$;
Rev. Mr. Wright.
Mrs. Wright
Rev. Mr. Wheeler.
$M r$. Weideman.
Mr. John Worgan, M. B.
$M r$. Wife, Organift at Nottingham.
Mr. Wainwright, Organift at Manchefter.
Mr. Ward, Bookjeller at Sheffield.


$$
E R R A \mathcal{T} A
$$

[^0]
## C O N T E N T S.

INTRODUCTION Page
The firt Greek Diatonic Syfem ..... 3
Its Divion into the Tetrachord Conjoint ..... 3
The greateft immoveable Greek Syftem ..... 4
Its Divifion into five Tetrachords ..... 5
The fifteen Modes of Ariftoxenes ..... 7
Diverfe Opinions of Authors in regard to the Modes ..... 8
Of the Enarmonic, Diatonic, and Cromatic Genera, with their refpective Colours ..... 9
The Addition of the four Greek Modes to the Cantos of bis Cburch of Milan, by St. Ambrofe ..... Io
The Cbangement of the Greek Letters into Roman, by Boetius ..... ibid.
And afterwards reftained by Pope Gregory the Great ..... II
Four more Greek Modes introduced by the fame Pope ..... ibid.
The Divifion of the above eight Modes into Aukatic, and Plagel ..... ibid.
T'be Reformation of the Greek immoveable great Syjfem, by Guido Aretino ..... 12
The Addition of fix Syllables to the Roman Letters, by the fame Guido ..... 14
The Explanation of Guido's Syftem, divided by $\sqrt{2 x}$ Hexachords, inftead of Tetrachords ..... ibid.
The above Syllables applied to the Hexachords in their Order upon the Left-band for the Help of the Memory in the Praftice of Singing. ..... 15
Tbe Introduction of Harmony by the fame Guido ..... 16
The Continuation of the Progrefs of Mufic till now ..... 19
B O O K I.
C HAP. I. Of Mufic in general.
Art. I. T H.E Definition of Mufic The general Divifion of Mufic ..... 22
III. Of Melody, and its Divifion ..... ib.
1V. Of Harmony ..... ib.
V. Of the Divifion of Harmony ..... $i b$.
C HAP. II. Of Mufical Sounds.
Art. I. THE Definition of mufical Sounds ..... Page 23 Of the Number of mufical Sounds ..... $i b$.
III. Of the different Intervals betwixt the eigbt original Sounds
C H A P. III.
Art. I. $)^{F}$ the new Modern general Syltem of Souna'sPage 25II. Of the verious Names to the different Intervals of the above general Syftem of Sounds ibid.
C H A P. IV.
1rr. I. (F the general Divifion of the general Syftem of Sounds, from which arife the ConfonantSyftem of Progreffion, or as conmonly called Modulation -—— Page 27
II. Of two Harmonic Movements added to the above Confonant Syfem of Progreflion ..... 29
III. Of the Divifion of the fundamental Progreffion arifing from the above Syftem ..... 30
C. H A P. V.
Arr. I. $\Omega^{F i}$ the Harmonic Divifion of the Syfem of Sounds, from whence arifes the Harmonic Syftem of Combination of Sounds ..... $3^{1}$
II. Of the Divifion of Combination of Sounds
CHAP.
Art. I. $O F$ tbe different Scales ..... Page 34
II. Of the-principal natural Scale ..... 35
III. Of its relative Scales. ..... ib.
IV. Of the artificial Scale, commonly called the Minor Mode ..... $3^{8}$
V. Of its relative Scales ..... 40
VI. Of Scales of Tranfpofition by the Confonant Movement ..... 41
VII. Of the Scales tranfpofed from the natural Scale ..... $i b$.
VIII. Of tranfpofing the artificial Scale ..... 42
1X. Of the Number of Scales arifing from the Tranfpofition ..... ib.
X. Of the different Scales of Melody in their different Keys ..... 43
XI. Of the divers Pofitions of the Unifon, refpectively to the different Keys
B O O K II.
Containing the fundamental Contrapoint, by which the following Harmonic Code iscompofed
--- -- --- -- ..... -- ---
PART I. The Harmonic Code.
CHAP. I. Containing the Confonant Movement by defcending a fifth Low, or a fourth High, commonly called the Skip of Cadence.
Art. I. $O^{F}$ the Confonant Combination ..... Page 46
II. Of the Simple Harmonic Combination ..... 47
Of the Manner of doubling the two Confonants, the Fifth and OEtave ..... $i b$.
III. Of the Compound Combination, and Firft with the Seventh ..... 48
Of adding the Fifth and Octave ..... $i b$.
Of the Combination of the Nintb ..... ib.
Of introducing the Ninth inftead of the OEtave ..... 49
Of joining the OEtave to the above Canon ..... $i b$.
Of paffing from one Dijcord to another ..... 50
IV. Of full Combination ..... ib.
V. Of the Seventh and Ninth paffing in anotber Difcord, called Falles of Propofitions ..... 51
How to refolve the Seventb and Nintb in afcending ..... ib.
VI. Of uncommon Combination, as Falfes by Anticipation ..... $5^{2}$
VII. Of Falfes by Cbange, as they are called by the Italian Mafters ..... 53
C HAP. II. Containing the imperfect Confonant Skip of Cuide.
Art. I. $O^{F}$ the Confonant Combination ..... Page 54
II. Of the Simple Harmonic Combination ..... $i b$.
Of doubling the two Confonants ..... 55
III. Of the Compound Combination ..... $i b$.
IV. Of Anticipations ..... ib.
C HAP. III. Containing the perfect Auxiliar Skip of Third low.
Art. I. THE above Skip is not properly fundamental in continual Progrefion ..... Page $5^{5}$
II. Of the Smple and compound Combination ..... $i b$.

C HAP. IV. Containing the fame Auxiliar Skip joined with the perfect Skip of Cadence.
Art. I. $N$ fimple Combination ..... Page 57
In compound Harmony tbree Canons ..... 58
CHAP.

## "CONTENTS.

C H A P. V. Containing the fame Skip joined with the imperfect Skip of Guide.


CHAP. VI. Containing the imperfect Auxiliar Skip of Third high.


CHAP. VII.
THE fame joined with the perfect Skip of Guide _—_ Page 60
CHAP. VIII.
OF divers Combinations with all the four Skips fundamental
Page 60

## PARTII. Of the Harmonic Code.

## C HAP. I. Containing the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence.

Art. I. $O \dot{F}$ tranfpofing the Scale in all Semitones, only in Confonant Combination $\longrightarrow$ Page 63
II. The Jame Tranfpofition with Harmonic Combination _—_ 64

The fame with the Ninth _- 65
Of tranjpofing the artificial Scale with Simple Combination ——_-_ ib.


V. Of the fame Tranfpofition in a better Manner $\quad 66$
VI. Of tranfpofing the natural Scale with the Refolution of the Compound Combination afcending 67

$$
\mathrm{CHAP.} \text { II. }
$$

$O^{F}$ tranfpofing the natural and artificial Scale by the imperfect Confonant Skip of Guide —— Page 68
C H A P. III.

OF tranjpofing the two principal Scales by perfect auxiliar Skip of Third low, in continual Pro-

C H A P. IV.
Art. I. $O^{F}$ the Tranfpofition by the Same auxiliar Skip, joined with the Skip of Cadence - Page 69
Of the Tranfpofition of the artificial Scale as above -_ib.
Of the fame Tranfpofition, but the Bafs fkipping by major and minor Thirds in the natural
Way - - - - - 70
Of the Tranfpofition of the natural Scale roith the fame Combination, but with the
fundamental Guide
The Manner of tranfpofing the artifcial Siale by the fame Progreffion a Semitone bigher ib.
II. Of the Tranfpofition of the natural Scale, by the fame Progreffion in compound Combination ib. The fame as the above, only different in the Combination to the Skip of Cadence, which is with Third major
$i b$.
Of the fame Tranfpofition of the artificial scale by both the above Skips _—_一 1
III. Of the fame Tranfpofition and Progrefion but in compound and full Combination in.

CHAP.
C O N T E N T S.
CHAP. V.
Art. I. O ${ }^{F}$ tranfpofing the natural Scale by the above auxiliar Skip of Third low, joined with the Skip of the Guide -_- Page $7^{2}$
II. Of transpofing both the natural and artificial Scales, as they bappen in their natural Order, by the above two Skips. ..... 73
C H A P. VI.
Art. I. $O^{F}$ the Tranfpofition by the imperfect auxiliar Skip of Third bigh, joined with the Skip of Cadence
11. The fane Tranfpoftion with compound Harmony the Manner of dividing the Octave, in four and three Parts, with the fame Progrefion ib.
C H A P. VII.
$O$ F the Tranfpofition by the above auxiliar Skip, joined wittb the Skip of Guide ..... Page 74 Of tranfpofing the natural Scale by the fame cuxiliar Skip afcending a major Tbird, joined with the fame Skip of Guide
C H A P. VIII.
$0^{\circ}$ $F$ the Tranfpoftion of both Scales, by all fundamental Skips in compound and full Harmony Page 75
B O O K III.
C H A P. I.
Art. I. OF figured Harmony ..... Page 78
II. Of the different Situation of the Bafs in figured Harmony ..... $i b$.
III. Of the Inverfion by the Ba/s Syncopes ..... 79
IV. Of varied and diminifbed Ba/s Notes ..... 80
V. Of fome equivocal Combination ..... 82
VI, VII. Of fome particular Inverfion arijing from the artificial Scale ..... 83, 84
VIII. Of Some irregular Combination in the artificial Scale ..... 36
IX. Of the different Motions and Variations of the fuperior Parts ..... 88
C H A P. II.
Art. I. $O^{F}$ Compofition in divers Parts ..... Page 90
II. Of Fugues and Imitations ..... 92
III. The Manner of compofing the Fugues and Imitations ..... 93
IV. Of compofing Canons ..... $9^{5}$
V. Of Cadences ..... $9^{8}$
VI. Of the Accent ..... 99
C H A P. III.
Art. I. THE Divifion of figurate Mufic ..... Page 102
II. Of vocal Mufic ..... ibid.
III. Of inftrumental Mufic ..... 103
IV. Of local Mufic, and firs of facred Mufic ..... 104
V. Of Theatrical Heroic Mufic ..... 107
Of Comic Mufic ..... 108
VI. Of Cbamber Mujic ..... ib.
$\mathrm{E} R \mathrm{R} A \mathrm{~T}$ A.
In the Contents.
Line 13. for Aukatic, read Autentic.
Chap. IV. Line 1. for General, read Confonant Divifon.
Chap. VI. Line 6. for Page 41, read Page 40.
——— Line 7. for ibid. read 41.
In Book II. Part I.
Art. V. Line in: for Propofitions, read Poftpofitions.
In Book II. Part II.
Chap. V. Line 4. for Page 73, read Page 72.
In Book III.
Chap. I. Line r. for Page 78 , read 77.
———Line 7. for Page 36, read 86.
In the Introduction.
Page 14. Line 10. for Lais, read Laxis.
In Book I. Chap. V.
Page 32. Line 26. for Plate 8, read Plate 9.

## In Book I. Chap. VI.

Page 34. Line Ir. for Noîfe, read Note.
Page 37. Line 20, read and the Indicative defiending Seven ferves only, \&c.
Page 39. Line 6. in the N. B. read, and it's tranjpofed Scales.
Page 40. Line 13. for as, read has the falfe Fifth A Flat.
Page 42. Line 6. from the Bottom, for Seven, read Five more of different, \&c:
-Line 2. from the Bottom, for eighty, read eighteen Scales.
Page 47. Line 13: for $F$ to $B$, read $B$ to $F$.
Page 48. Line 1. for Confonant, read Compound Combination.
Page 53. Line 7. from the Bottom, read Firft and Second Chorus.
Page 57. Line 12. for two, read true fundamental Baffe fubfift.
Page 72. Line 5, read defcending continually by Fifths is contrary, \&c.
Page 78. Line 24. omit Canon, and read Combination has no more.
Page 82. Art. V. read Of fome equivocal Combination.
Page 100. Line 36. for compacted, read divided in two Notes.

$$
-
$$



# D E L L' <br> ARTE ARMONICA. 

T H E

## I NT.RODUCTION;

CONTAINING

## An HISTORY of the Progress of MUSIC to this Time.

 A T URE hath provided all Animals with certain Infincts, neceffary both for their general and particular Prefervation. Brutes are limited to fimple Inftincts, by which they are wholly guided and directed. But Man is diftinguifhed by the Gift of Reafon, by which he is able to controul, regulate, and ufe his feveral Inftincts and Propenfions, according to his Will and Pleafure. Moreover, there are implanted in him the Seeds (as it were) of feveral ufeful and pleafant Arts, with the Power of cultivating and bringing them to Perfection.

One of thefe Seeds, and not the leaft confpicuous, is undoubtedly the Faculty of Singing, of which Mufic may be confidered as an Improvement; whofe Bufinefs it is to chear the Mind, and to relieve it, not only from the Irkfomenefs of Idlenefs, the Gloom of Care, and the Fatigue of domeftic Employments; but likewife from the Power and Tyranny of our boifterous Paffions, and many other Evils, which do but too often invade both the Mind and the Body, as the Hiftory of Mankind moft plainly fhews.

Thus we may, upon the beft Ground in the World, affert, that Singing and Mufic are born with Man, are congenial, and even interwoven into his Frame and Conftitution.

But then, as every one was endowed with a Propenfity and Genius peculiar to himfelf, and modell'd, as it were, according to the Singularity of his own Conftitution, there would arife in the World an almoft infinite Variety of Taftes and Opinions, agreeable to the different Genius and Temper of different Perfons and different Nations; and Singing and Mufic being differently purfued and cultivated, would at length be accommodated to the Tafte of every particular Country, and to the Turn of its Inhabitants.

Thus the Mufic of the Turks, is entirely different from ours. The People of Fez, Morocco, and other Parts of Africa, have again a different Kind, which to us, who are not accuftomed to it, appears to be very rough and horrid; but it neverthelefs is highly pleafing and entertaining to them.

Thus, among the feveral Nations of Europe, there are fround different Manners of Singing. The French, Polanders, Sicilians, Scotch, and other People, have every one a certain Mode peculiar to their Idioms, and the Tafte of their Country; which muft certainly proceed from their different Tempers and Conftitutions, owing perhaps in a great Meafure to the different Climates in which they live. There is alfo a great Variety of Taftes and Opinions among the Inhabitants of the fame Country.

One Man is better pleafed with the brifk and lively, whilft another is more delighted with the grave and pathetic.

Mufic, like all other Arts, is fubject to the various Viciffitudes of beginning, improving, arriving at, what we may call, its perfect State, and afterwards decaying.

But of the different Epochas of the Improvements of Mufic, and the various Gradations 'by which that delightful Art hath arrived to its prefent State, we have in Truth but a veity fcanty and imperfect Knowledge.

Sacred Hiftory informs us, that $\mathcal{T} u b a l$, the fixth Defcendant from Adam, was the Inventor of Wind Inftruments, from whence we may juftly infer, that thefe being contrived to imitate the human Voice, Singing muft before haye arrived at fome Degree of Perfection.

From the fame Hiftory we learn, that in Fudea, in the Time of King David, a great Number of Singers and Performers upon Harps, and other Inftruments, were employed in the Service of God; that therein were introduced both Pfalms and Hymns; David, the King, himfelf affifting in thofe Performances.

In Imitation of this, and indeed as a Proof of it, there very Pfalms are ufed to this Day in the Offices of the Chriftian Church.

But all this implies no more, than that Mufic exifted in thofe Times, and even was had in great Honour and Eftimation: For no Mention is made when or how it was learned, nor how far the Art had proceeded; only we are affured, that the Fewifl Lyre was mounted with a confiderable Number of Strings, and that David was the beft Artift of his Time; and was employed as fuch for the curing of his Predeceffor, King Saul, of his Phrenzy, as appears from Samuel xvi.

All that from this Time (that is from the Age of King David) can be known, and that not without fome Confufion, is, that Mufic had a new Epocha in Greece, where it began by Singing: That their firf Poets recited their own Compofitions, with a certain Manner of Expreffion, elevating and lowering the Voice, as the Subject required, by the Help of the Lyre, an Inftrument furnifhed with three Strings in fome Provinces, and in others with four, which were fo difpofed, as to proceed from the Grave to the Acute, after the Manner of a Scale, and were founded by the Touch of the Fingers, as the prefent Guitar, or Lute, is. From whence it follows, that the vocal Performances of this early Age, could be no more than fimple and plain Recitative, after the Manner of the Orator, C. Graccbus, at Rome, who, according to the Teftimony of Cicero, in his Treatife de Oratore, Book III. Sect. 60, made Ufe in fpeaking to the Public, not of a Lyre indeed, as mentioned above, but of the Sound of a fmall Flute, which a Perfon, who ftood privately behind him, held, and whenever he either funk his Voice too low, or raifed it too high, he was by this Means, namely, by the Help of the Tone of this Inftrument, recalled to the proper Pitch. According to fome, the like had been practifed before by Demofthenes, in Greece.

But as the Voices of Men are not of an equal Pitch, as to the Grave and the Acute, the four Strings, which were affixed to the Lyre, were not fufficient for the Purpofe of every Voice ; therefore they added to the former four, three other Strings, gradually rifing higher; by which Means, they were now able to produce feven different Sounds, proceeding from
the Grave to the Acute, as in the firft Example, Plate I. Thefe feven Strings were named, according to their Place, upon the Inftrument, as follows.

The firft was the moft grave, and was called Hypate, which fignifies the principal, or the moft honourable.

The fecond, which was fomewhat more acute, was termed Parhypate, that is, the next to Hypate.

The third was called Lycanos, which is as much as to fay, that it was to be founded by the indicial Finger.

The fourth they called Mefe, becaufe it was in the Middle of the feven Strings.
The fifth was called Paramefe, which fignifies the next to the Mefe.
The fixth was termed Paranete, being next to the Nete, or laft String.
The feventh they called Nete, which fignifies the new or laft String; and this was the moft acute of all: For it was the Cuftom of thefe ancient Times, as it is at this Day, in Lutes, Violins, and other like Inftruments, to place the largeft, or Grave String, uppermoft, and fo defcend gradually to the fmalleft, or Acute, which was put at the inferior Part of the Inftrument.

The Degrees, or Intervals, between one Sound and another, were ftiled Tones and Semitones; the Tones were divided into greater and leffer Tones,' the common Meafure of which was called a Comma; there being none of thefe Commas contained in the greater Tone, and eight in the leffer.

From the firft Grave, or largeft String, called Hypate, to the fecond String, Parhypate, they eftimated the Diftance to be a Semitone, confifting of five Commas.

From the fecond to the third String Lycanos, the Diftance was a greater Tone.
From the third to the fourth String, called Mefe, they counted the Diftance to be a Minor Tone.

From the fourth to the Paramefe, or the fifth String, a Semitone.
From the fifth to the Paranete, or the fixth String, a greater Tone.
From the fixth to the feventh, or laft String, a Minor Tone.
And thus thofe feven Strings made fix Intervals; two of the greater Tone, two of the leffer Tone, and two of a Semitone, as in the above-mentioned Example the firft, Plate I.

Such was the firft Scale of Sounds amongft the Greeks, which in their Language was called Syftem, and correfponds with the modern Scale, beginning at B, and rifing thus, C, $D, E, F, G, A$, excepting, that in the modern Scale, there is no Deftination of the Tones into greater or leffer, but they are confidered as being all equal.

This Syftem the Greeks was called by the Name of Tetrachord Conjunct, becaufe it was confructed of two Diateffiarons, that is of two Fourths, each being compofed of four Sounds in Sequence ; fo that the Sound which was the Acute, or higheft Termination of the firf Diateffaron, lerved for the firft Grave Sound of the fecond; and both thefe Diateffarons (at prefent cailed Fourths) had the Order of their refpective Strings, equal in Point of Interval, or Diftance.

For from the firit Grave String, or Hypate, they reckoned a Semitone.
From the fecond to the third, a greater Tone.
And from this to the fourth, a leffer Tone; and, beginning from the fame fourth String, which by that Means came to be the firft of the next Diateffaron, the Diftance between it and the fecond String was a Semitone, between the fecond and third a greater Tone, and between the third and fourth, or laft String of the whole Tetrachord Conjunct, a leffer Tone. In fhort, juft as it is feen in the Order of the above Scale, or Syftem, which being divided in the Manner above-mentioned, formed two equal Intervals, the one Grave, and the other Acute, as it is defcribed in the fecond Example, Plate I.

The above Divifion into Tetrachords, ferved to no other Purpofe, but to enable the Ancients to transfer the firft Diateflaron into the Place of the fecond; that is to fay, the four Grave Sounds into the four Acute, or the four Acute into the four Grave, for the Advantage of the Voice, as that was high or low. And the Lyre, when capable of thefe Tranfpofitions, became a competent Regulator of different Voices in their different Pitch.

But as thefe Tones of the Greeks were eftimated by the Comma, which was but an imaginary Meafure, and had no Relation to any Thing certain, fixed, and known, and confequently was liable to be underftood with more or lefs Latitude, the above Syftem, or Scale of feven Sounds, was found to be imperfect, and, as it is faid, was amended in the Time of Pytbagoras. Probably one of their Singers, or Poets, which ever it was, vifited the School of Pythagoras, in Italy, and learned from him (who appears, from Hiftory, to have been the firft that found out the Method of explaining, to the Human Underftanding, the Diftance or Diverfity of Sounds, as they were high or low) that if one Sound was added to the feven contained in the above Scale, fuch added Sound, whether it were high or low, would be found, in refpect of the others, perfectly confonant with that which was fartheft from it, whether high or low ; and therefore in a Scale, which was to ferve for a Syftem of Sounds, the Octave, or confonant Sound, ought neceffarily to be included; fince it would prove a fixed, fenfible, and intelligent Termination of an Interval or Compafs, that included in it every pofible Divifion of Sounds, the Differences of which, like Parts relative to a Whole, could only be determined by this Means.

Thus they added to the feven Strings, and at the Top of the Lyre, the deep String that was wanting, which became Confonant with that acute String, which was fartheft off; fo that the String called Hypate, which was before the deepeft, came now to be but the fecond deep String; and its. Interval or Diftance from the faid String, which they called Proflambanomenos, that is to fay the added, was a greater Tone; and the String Nete, which was the Seventh in the former Scale, came to be the Eighth acute String, perfectly confonant with the Proflambanomenos, which was the deepeft in this their new Scale.

There fubfifted between thefe two Extremes of the Prollambanomenos, and the Nete, an Interval certain and diftinct, which included in it the other fix Sounds of the Scale, every one at their proper Diftance proportioned to the Whole; and in this Manner they improved their firft Syftem.

But, for the Information of thofe who are unfkilled in Mufic, we thall give a fhort Explanation of that Interval, which by the Greeks was called Dia Pafon, and by the modern Muficians the Octave, becaufe it includes in it the whole Natural Scale of the Eight Primary Sounds of Mufic.

Every one knows, that any Sound whatfoever being given, another, and even many, may be given, that fhall be exactly fimilar to it, and neither higher or lower. But thofe, who have no Knowledge of Mufic, have not perhaps oblerved, that over and above thofe
fimiliar Sounds above-mentioned, which by Muficians are diftinguifhed by the Name of Unifons, an Infinity of other Sounds may be given, either higher or lower, which though they are not Unifons, and fimilar one with another, becaufe they are higher or lower, yet they are confimilar; fo as they alfo feem to be only one Sound, though one be high and the other low, the higher being abforbed in the lower.

Of this any one may be fenfible, by touching any Key of an Organ or Harpfichord, together with any other Key, at the Diftance of an Octave; he will find, that the Grave, or deep Sound, abforbs in a Manner the Acute, or high one, and that it renders it, as it were, undiftinguifhable, the Acute Sound ferving to no other Purpofe, but to ftrengthen and inforce the Grave, or deep Sound. With good Reafon, therefore, thefe confimilar Sounds, which are at the Diftance of an Octave, are called by Muficians confonant Sounds, to diftinguifh them from thofe which being perfectly fimilar, are called Unifons: And all the Sounds which are contained in the aforefaid Interval of the Octave, have in like Manner every one, whether higher or lower, their confonant Octave; for which Reafon, not only the firft Octave, but alio all the others, are capable of being inforced in infinitum, both in Height and in Depth, by additional Sounds.

It is alfo found, that befide the two extreme Sounds of the Octave, the fifth of the eight Sounds of the Octave, becomes alfo confonant with the firft deep Sound. This is proved by Trial on the Organ, for touch whatfoever Key you pleafe in the Stop, called Sefquialtera, in which Stop all the Keys are joined with their refpective Fifths, the fifth Sound is fo clofely united with its deeper Sound, that it cannot be diftinguifhed; and thus all the perfect Fifths, which confift of feven Semitones, are confidered as confonant, tho' not fo perfectly as the Octave.

## We return now to the Hiftory of the Progrefs of Mufic in Greece.

As Nature, for our common Good, has implanted in the Breaft of Man, the Love of Glory, and the Defire of excelling in great Actions, and ufeful and pleafing Arts and Knowledge, it is no Wonder that the mufical Art, which fprang firt in Greece from the emphatical Recitations of the Poets, acquiring afterwards, by Degrees, a greater Energy of Pronounciation, was improved into a Species of Singing, and at laft into Melody, and fpread itfelf in Progrefs of Time from Province to Province, but in different Manners, according to the Genius and Turn of the Inhabitants of the Country. From hence there arofe a Neceflity to increafe continually the Number of the Strings of the Lyre; and moreover, new Inftruments of Mufic, both of the Stringed and Wind Kind, were invented and introduced.

At length then to unite, and the better to diftinguifh, all the Sounds which they had fucceffively introduced into their Lyre; a new Syftem was eftablifhed, and was called the greateft, and the unchangeable Syftem ; which was fo termed, becaufe it included, in their Opinion, every other lefler Syftem, or Divifion whatfoever.
This Syftem confifted of a Scale of fixteen Sounds, which formed their Difdiapafon, or double Octave; that is, to their firf Diapafon, or Octave of the eight Primary Sounds, there was joined another Octave, or eight Sounds, fimilar to the firt, but higher, as in Example III. Plate I.

But as the firft Scale of feven Strings was divided into two leffer Syftems of four Strings each, which were named as above, the Tetrachords conjoined, from whence the deep String, called the Proflambanomenos, which was the deepft Note in the Syftem, was excluded. So in this new greatef Syftem, there was annexed three other Tetrachords: From whence this Syftem came to be divided into five Tetrachords, the Note Prollambanomenos being likewife excluded. Example IV. Plate I.

The firft of thefe five Tetrachords was called the Tetrachord Hypaton, the firn String of which anfwering to the Note B natural, of our modern Scale, was named Hypate Hypaton, that is the Hypate of the Tetrachord Hypaton.

The fecond String of the fame Tetrachord, which correfponds to the Note C, in our Scale, was called Parhypate Hypaton.

The third String was named Lycanos Hypaton, which is the Note D, in our Scale.
The fourth String, which finifhed the firft Tetrachord, they called Hypate Mefon, becaule it ferved for the firf String of the fecond Tetrachord, which was called Meon, at the fame Time that it was the fourth String of the firf Tetrachord, which String or Sound correfponds with our prefent E.

The fecond String of the fecond Tetrachord Mefon, was called Parhypate Mefon, which is the Note F, in our prefent Scale.

The third String was Lycanos Mefon, and the fourth Mefe, the fame as G and A, in our firft Scale.

Then followed the third Tetrachord, called Synemmenon, or conjoined, which, according to the Order and Nature of the two firft conjoined, ought to have the Diftance or Interval of a Semitone, from the firft to the fecond String; but as the faid laft String Mefe, .which coincides with the Note A, is diftant a whole greater Tone from the next String, called Paramefe, which is our prefent Note B, they were obliged, in order to make the third Tetrachord unite with the former, in the fame Order of Tones, to divide the Interval betwixt the two Strings Mefe and Paramefe, by inferting a new Note, or Sound, between them, diftant a Semitone from the preceding String, and a greater Tone from the following Note higher; which greater Tone confifted of nine Commas, viz. five between Hypate and Parhypate, or from B to C, and four from B flat to B natural, (from which Divifion arofe the Diftinction of the greater and leffer Semitone) and the firft String of this Tetrachord, called Synemmenon, correfponding to A in the prefent Scale, was termed Mefe Synemmenon, and was diftant a greater Semitone from the fecond adjacent String, which was called Trite Synemmenon, correfponding to the prefent B flat.

The third String, which was diftant a greater Tone, was called Paranete Synemmenon, that is C ; and,

The fourth String, Nete Synemmenon, was fuppofed to be diftant a IVinor Tone from the third. In this Manner was the third Tetrachord conftructed.

To pafs then to the other two Tetrachords, which were called disjoined, and made up the five, into which the greatefl Syftem was divided, they came next to the String Paramefe, or B natural, which was feparated from the String Mefe, by the abovefaid new added String; and proceeding to the fecond String of the fourth Tetrachord, which was called Diazeugmenon (which fignifies disjoined) they called it Trite Diazeugmenon, it being diftant a Semitone from the firft String, and a greater Tone from the third, called Paranete Diazeugmenon, which was diftant a leffer Tone from the fourth, called Netdiazeugmenon: This fourth String then ferved, according to the Order and Method of the other Tetrachords, for the firft String of the fifth, or laft Tetrachord, which was named Hyperbolæon, that is, excelling or exceeding; the fecond String of this was named Trite Hyperbolæon, the third Paranete Hyperbolæon, and the fourth Nete Hyperbolæon.

Thefe two Tetrachords were nothing more than a Tranfpofition of the two former, an Octave higher, or more acute, which correfponded, as has been faid, to the Notes $\mathrm{B}_{2}$, $C, D, E$, and $E, F, G, A$, in our preent Scale.

Nev, in the aforefaid Difpofition of the five Tetrachords of the Sylema Maximum, or greateft Syftem, we muft obferve, that the third conjoined Tetrachord is not fimilar to the others; for fince from the fecond String Trite Synemmenon, or B flat, inferted between Mefe and Paramefe, to the third String Paranete Synemmenon, or C, there is reckoned to be the Diftance of a greater Tone, therefore from Paranete Synemmenon, or C, to Nete Synemmenon, or $D$, there ought only to be a leffer Tone; whereas the Interval betwixt $C$ and $D$, in the firft and fourth Tetrachords, was calculated to be a greater Tone, and not a lefier. From whence it appears, that, from the Time that the greateft Syftem was 'divided into the abovefaid Tetrachords, the Artifts did no longer regard the Diftinction of the greater and leffer Tone, without which Diftinction the aforefaid Tetrachords were all five equally divided into two Tones, and a Semitone, in the fame-Manner as it was divided by the Pyibagoreans.

But at this Time, and for fome Time after, the Ancients had no other Notes or Characters by which to diftinguifh and mark the Sounds of their Songs, but the above-mentioned Names, appropriated to the Strings of their Lyre: From whence it may be inferr'd, with the greateft Probability, that their Mufic confifted of nothing more than fimple Melody, in the Nature of Recitative, or rather of a melodious Utterance, Pronounciation, or Expreffion, purpofely adapted to their poetical Compofitions; and Strabo afferts, that the ancient Poets rehearfed their Works to the Sound of fome Initrument, catching and inveigling their Auditors by that Artifice.

Therefore, diverfifying one after another, this their firft fimple Method, and introducing alfo a certain Species of Chanting, in the Manner of a Song, and this proceeding in divers Manners, according to the Difference of the Country, and Taftes of the Inhabitants, they, at length, in order to be able to give a Name to every Note which they were continually adding to their Inftruments, changed the Names of the Strings into the Letters of their Alphabet, placing the firft Letters to the graveft Sound, and the others in Sequence, proceeding from the graveft to the acutef.

But as the Science of Mufic received daily Improvement, fometimes in one Province, and fometimes in another, and from the public Places being introduced into Houfes or Palaces, Temples and Theatres, and that in different Taftes and Manners, according to the particular Genius of the Inhabitants of the feveral Provinces; from thence there arofe a Variety, in the Order of their Scales, the Pofition or Places of the Sounds being by this greatly multiplied, and the Letters of the Alphabet not being fufficient to denominate all the different Places of every Sound, upon their Variation of Pofition, they were obliged to increafe the Signs or Notes, or the Names taken from the Alphabet, by turning the Letters to the Right Hand or to the Left, or placing them above or below, and adding befides, certain Points, and other Characters.

This Diverfification of Modes was afterwards diftinguifhed by the Name of the Country, where each was principally ufed.

Ariftoxemus, who appears to have been the firft that wrote regularly, and perhaps the beft on the Subject of Mufic, diftributed the different Methods of Singing into fifteen Modes, and thefe again into three different Pofitions, according to the different Parts of the human Voice. Five were called Principals, which he placed in the Middle; five others were called Collaterals, but graver; and the remaining five Collaterals, but acuter.

The Principals in the Middle were the Doric, the Iafic or Ionic, the Pbrygian, the EEolic, and the Lydian.

The five Collaterals on the Acute, or higher Part, were the fame, but were diftinguifhed by the Word Hyper, which fignifies above, that is, the Hyper Doric, the Hyper Iaftic; the Hyper Pbrygian, the Hyper Eolic, and the Hyper Lydian.

In the fame Manner to the Collaterals on the deep or grave Part, the Word Hypo was prefixed, meaning the inferior, as the Hypo Doric, Hypo Iafic, \&c.

There fifteen Modes were diftant a Semitone one from another; the Diapafon or Octave being divided into twelve Semitones, or Intervals, of thirteen Sounds, every Sound of the two Collaterals was diftant from its refpective principal, one Diateffaron, that is to fay, a perfect fourth, confifting of five Semitones, as may be feen in Example V. Plate I. wherein the fifteen Modes are placed over the Names ufed in our prefent Scale, which correfpond with the ancient Greek Scale, or Diapafon, according to the Method of Arifoxenus.

Cafiodorus, writing to Boetius, fays, in the fecond Book of his Epiftle, that the artificial Mufie has fifteen Modes, agreeing in this with Arifoxenus.

Euclid, who follows Arifoxenus too, gives us but thirteen, at a Semitone's Diftance one from another ; that is, he went not beyond the laft Semitone of the Diapafon, which he confidered, as being divided, according to the Doctrine of Arifoxenus, into twelve Semitones, and thirteen Sounds. He omitted the Hyper Ætolic, and Hyper Lydian, placed by Arifoxenus amongtt the high Collaterals, beyond the laft high Note of the Diapafon.

Cenforinus alfo makes Mention of thofe thirteen Modes.
Plato, fpeaking occafionally of thofe Modes, in the third Book of his Republic, reckons them fix; and in another Place, namely, in the Piece called Laches, he mentions only four.

Apuleius talks of the Atolic, the Iaftic, the Lydian, the Pbrygian, and the Doric.
Arifides 2uintilian mentions fix, the Doric, the Pbrygian, the Iafic, the Lydian, the Mixolydian, and the Syntonolydian.

Fulius Pollux reckons eight, Lucian four; and many, confidering Greece as divided inta Doria, Æolia, and Ionia, and that thefe were its proper Bounds, have named only the Doric, the Æolic, and the Ionic.

Phutarch afferts, that the ancient Modes were no more than three, that is, the Doric, the Phrygian, and the Lydian.

Ptolomy, with whomagrees Boetius, confiders the Doric, the Pbrygian and the Lydian, as Principals. The Hypo Dorian, the Hypo Pbrygian, and the Hypo Lydian, as Collaterals.

Abuleius, and Martian Capella, changed the Order ; Apuleius placing the Æolic firf, and Martian Capella the Lydian.

Lucian gave the firft Place to the Phrygian, and many others, whom, for Brevity Sake, we forbear to mention, have given different Names to the Modes, and have placed them in a different Manner; for which Reafon it is impoffible, in fpeaking of the ancient Modes, to give any very diftinct or certain Account of them, either as ta their Number, their Names, Order, or Situation.

Strabo, in the Place above quoted, fpeaking of the ancient Poets, fays, that as their Poetry confifted of different Meafures, fo the Methods of rehearfing of it were different, and one could not be ufed for another. Their Verfes having a certain determinate Order, they diftributed them into three Claffes, one of which was the Dittyrambic, the other the Tragic, and the third the Comic. To each of thefe Claffes they affigned a proper Manner of Recitative ; from whence it came to pafs, that the Chants, or Mufic, derived from the Nature of the poetical Compofitions, were called Modes. If the Verfes related to any doleful Matter, they called it the Doleful Mode; if to any Thing Bacchanalian, the Bacchic, and fo of the reft; and as the Nations were different, and every one had its
proper Manner of reciting and finging peculiar to itfelf, they confequently denominated thore Modes from the Countries where they were principally ufed, as the Pbrygiun, the Doric, the Lydian, \&cc. The Doric Mode was ufed by the People of Doria, in that Part of Achaia, which is now called the Morea; and this Mode partook fomething both of the Lydian and the Pbrygian, that is, both of the foft and the harfh. The Pbrygian Mode was employed by certain Pecple in Ajfa Minor, who being by Nature of a fierce and cruel Difpofition, it was confequently of a fevere and furious Quadity. The Lydian Mode was introduced by the Lydians, a People of the Great Afia, of a chearful and gay Temper; and from thence it was called the moderate, or moden Mode. This is the Account given us by the aforefaid Author.

The above three Clafles, mentioned by the fame Author, were called Genera by the Greeks, which three Genera they diftinguifhed into fix Colours, as they called them. One of thofe Genera was named the Diatonic, another the Chromatic, and the other Enharmonic. It is probable that the Dithyrambic was applied to the Diatonic, the Tragic to the Chromatic, and the Nomic, or Comic, to the Enharmonic. To the Enharmonic Genus was affigned one Colour, two to the Diatonic, and three to the Chromatic; which was called Chromatic, or coloured, becaufe more Colours were affigned to it than to the other two.

Every one of the three Genera, with their Colours, were conftructed by the Diateffaron, being divided, by different Intervals, into four Strings. The two extreme Strings, of each Tetrachord of the greateft Syftem, were called fixed or immoveable: The oiher two, or middle Strings, were moveable, becaufe they were differently tuned, according as each Genus, and its Colours, required. Every one of the three Genera, and its Colours, had their proper Species, which were divided in the fame Intervals of its Genus and Colour, but in different Order, and in this Manner was diftinguifhed every Mode, Pbrygian, Lydian, sic.

The above Intervals, relating to every one of the Genera, and their Colours, were differently divided by fome Authors, who followed the firt Divifion of the firf Syftem of feven Strings, in Tones and Semitones, Major and Minor ; which Divifion cannot fubfift in the Tranfpofition of the Scale, as has been demonftrated in the third Tetrachord of the greatef Syftem. But the Meafure of the abovefaid Intervals was juflly computed by the Followers of Pytbagoras, who confidered every Tetrachord of the fame greateft Syftem, as compofed of two Major Tones, one Semitone of four Commas; only that the Diateffaron conftucted in this Manner, confifting of twenty-two Commas, the fmalleft Intervals of the Genera become divided by Fractions, and confequently not fo clearly intelligible to thofe who are not fo well acquainted with nice Calculations. Therefore the beft and the eafief Explanation of the above Intervals was made by Arifoxenus, as it is defcribed by Euclid, (Introd. Harm.) Arifoxenus divided the Tone into twelve Parts, fix of which he gave to the Semitone. In this Manner the Diateflaron was compofed of thirty Parts, being two Tones, and a Semitone. Four Parts of the above twelve Parts he affigned to the fmall Interval of the Chromatic, which was called Diefis Trientalis, namely, a third Part of a Tone; to the finalleft Interval of the Enharmonic, three Parts of the above twelve, which was called the quadrantal Diefis Enharmonic, namely, the fourth Part of a Tone. The Enharmonic Genus, being only diftinguifhed by one Colour, was compofed of two quadrantal Diefis, and of one Ditone, namely, from the firt String to the fecond, one of the faid Diefis, or Quarter of a Tone; another like Diefis from the fecond to the third String, and one Interval of a Ditone from the third String to the fourth; which three Intervals compofe the perfect Diateflaron.

The Diatonic Genus was difinguifhed by two Colours, one of which was named Molle, and this was formed by three Intervals, one of fix Parts, namely, a Semitone; another of nine Parts, or three Quarters of a Tone, and the other of fifteen Parts, namely, a Tone, and one Quarter of a Tone. The other Celour was called Syntonum, the Intervals whereof
were fix, twelve, and twelve, or one Semitone, one Tone and one Tone; and this is the common Diatonic, which may be applied to the prefent natural Scale. The Chromatic was diftinguifhed by three Colours; the firlt was named Molle, and was compofe of two Intervals, each of one Triental Diefis, which is a third Part of a Tone, and another Interval, confifting of twenty two Parts, namely, one Tone, and ten Twelfths of a Tone, which three Intervals together make the perfect Diateffaron. The fecond Colour was named Sefcuplum, or Hemiolion ; and this was compofed of two Intervals, each confifting of four Parts, and an Half of the twelve Parts, into which the Tone was divided; and of another Interval confifting of a Tone, and three Quarters of a Tone, or twenty-tivo Tweifths. The third Colour was named Toniæum, and was compofed of three Intervals of fix, fix, and eighteen Parts, namely, from the firft String to the fecond fix Parts, or one Semitone, from the fecond to the third String, fix other Parts, and from the third String to the fourth, an Interval of one Tone and an Half, or three Semitones. And in this Manner the three Genera, and their refpective Colours, were divided.

Of the above fix Colours, which belong to the three Genera, only the Syntonum Diatonic is the natural, which may be applied to the prefent natural Scale, in afcending and defcending gradually, and by Skips, without any Alteration. The Toniæum Chromatic may alfo be applied to the prefent Scale, with its third Minor, being compofed by three Semitones; but becaufe it is compofed of one undivided Interval of three Semitones, can only afcend and defcend by Skips, but not gradually.

The other four Colours have all their Intervals unnatural, not only the leffer, but alfo the greater ; it being impoffible to diftinguifh the Difference between a third Part and a fourth Part of a Tone, by the common natural Senfation; befides the Difficulty, or rather Impracticability of a juft Intonation of thofe leffer Intervals, and alfo of the larger Intervals, as the incompofite Intervals of nine, fifteen, twenty-one, and twenty-two twelfth Parts of a Tone. Therefore it is natural to fuppofe, that the Chromatic, being applied to Tragic Compofitions, as before faid, one of its Colours might be ufed to exprefs Pain, Cruelty, or Rage, and the other to exprefs Grief, Horror, or Defpair ; and the Enharmonic being applied to Comedy, the Comedians might endeavour to ufe the Intervals defcribed in its Colour. But we much queftion whether thore Intervals were executed with an exact and juft Intonation, which feems impracticable, and think it more probable, that the Performers of that Time, in their Manner of Singing in the Compafs of thefe Colours, did much the fame Thing as is done at this prefent Time by fome Performers, who, to fhew their Ability, afcend or defcend two or more Tones with their Voices, or Inftruments, by extremely fmall and undiftinguifhable Intervals; or, as it is done by fome Actors in the Comic Mufic, who proceed with their Voices in Imitation of Laughing or Crying, or fome other charged Expreffion.

This is in brief all which can be recovered of the ancient Greck Mufic, their Syftems, Modes, and Genera, which can ferve no other Purpofe, but to gratify the Curiofity, being all unnecefflary to the Underftanding and Practice of the prefent Mufic.

In the above State and Condition, Mufic continued in Greece till it was fubdued and conquered by the Romans; and nearly in the fame Manner was the Art exercifed by the Romans, without any remarkable Alteration, till the fourth Century, when the Emperor Confantine the Great embraced the Chriftian Religion, in Confequence whereof Churches were publickly opened for the Ufe of his Chriftian Subjects.

Not long after that Time St. Ambrofe, Bifhop of Milan, felected four Greek Modes, namely the Doric, the Pbrygian, the Lydian, and the Mixo Lydian, in order to apply them to the Pfalms and Hymns of his Church of Milan: From whence afterwards Mufic entered gradually, and was fpread into the other Churches.

In the fame Century, in the Time of Boetius, the Greek Letters which were before ufed in
the greateft or unchangeable Syftem, as it was called, were altered, and in their Place the Letters of the Roman Alphabet were put, beginning with A, which was fet againft the Note Proflabanomenos of the firft deep Note of that Syftem, and from thence proceeding gradually, as far as the Letter P, which Letter was affigned to the Note Nete-hyperbolæon, the acuteft in the Syftem. But afterwards the Roman Letters were reftrained by Pope Gregory the Great, to the firft feven, A, B, C, D, E, F, G. After which the fame Letters followed again, but in the fmall Character, to exprefs the next following Octave above; and thus they left out all the other Letters from H to P , as ufelefs, and only tending to Confufion. The fecond Octave Acute was here confidered as only correfpondent to the firft.

This Pope added four others of the Greek Modes, to wit, the Hypo Doric, the Hypo Plyrygian, the Hypo Lydian, and the Hypomixo Lydian, to thofe four which had been chofen by St. Ambrofe.

The four chofen by St. Ambrofe were named authentic, and prefelect; and the four which were added were called plagal, or fublervient. And thefe eight Tones were united two by two, one authentic, the other plagal, namely, the Doric with the Hypo Doric, the Pbrygian with the Hypo Pbrygian, the Lydian with the Hypo Lydian, and the Mixo Lydiass with the Hypomixo Lydian.

Every two Modes thus united were reckoned as only one, the Doric and Hypo Doric, called Protos, or firf, the Phyrgian and Hypo Pbrygian, called Deuteros, or fecond, the Lydian and Hypo Lydian, called Tritos, or third, and the Mixo Lydian and the Hypomixo Lydian, called Tetartos, or fourth. But thofe Modes were afterwards feparated, and the Authentic divided and diftinguifhed from the Plagal, in the following Order, namely, the firft Authentic, the fecond Plagal, the third Authentic, the fourth Plagal, ©̛c. the Authentic being always placed the firft as prefelect, and the Plagal after, as fubfervient to the Authentic. The Diapente being affigned for the principal Form of the Mode, and the Diateffaron for the Difference, in a Manner, that when the Diateffaron was found in the acute Part of the Diapafon, as A, E, A, and the like, the Mode was authentic, and when the Diateffaron was in the lower, or grave Part of the Diapafon, as A, D, A, the Mode was plagal. And in this Manner every Mode authentic and plagal had a Place in one of the feven Species of the Diapafon (which feven Species were reckoned beginning from A to A, B to B, and fo of the reft, being in all feven Octaves) and when the Octave was divided geometrically, the Mode was authentic, and when divided arithmetically, was plagal ; but the firft Chord was always the grave Chord of the Diapente, to both the Authentic and the Plagal.

Guido Aretino, and his Followers, divided arithmetically only the firft, fecond, and third Species, geometrically the fifth, fixth, and feventh, and the fourth Species arithmetically and geometrically. But Henrico Glareano obferving, that every one of the feven Species of Octave may be divided both arithmetically and geometrically, except the fecond Species, beginning at the Chord Hypate, or B , and the fixth beginning at Paramefe, or $\mathrm{F}, \mathrm{B}$ not having its perfect Diapente, and F its perfect Diateffaron, in the Diatonic Syftem, augmented the Tones to twelve, beginning always at A.

Zarlino in the fame Manner divided the feveral Species into twelve; but finding that when the firft Species began in A, fome Notes of the Cantus Firmus, or plain Chant, were not in their natural Situation, he, in his fecond Edition of his harmonic Inftitutions, began the firf Species in C, following in that the Opinion of Ptolomy, according to which the Order of the firf Species was Tone, Tone, and Semitone. But thefe Alterations were not received by the principal Churches of Italy, ftill adhering to the eight Tones or Modes of Guido Aretino; and thofe eight Tones are called the Tones of the Church, under the Names of Cantus Firmus, or Planus, and Cantus Gregorianus; and in the principal Churches of Italy, particularly thofe in the Dutchy of Milan, which followed the Ambrofian Ritual, it never was,
nor is now permitted, to the Precentors, or Mafters of the Choir, to tranfgrefs the Order of the Modes or Tones of Guido Aretino, in the Progreffion and Modulation of their Compofitions, in what is called Alla Breve for the Chapel.

This has been, and is now punctually obferved, out of Veneration for the two great Perfonages who firf introduced thofe Modes or Tones into the Church. However, it occafioned amongft the Profeffors themfelves, a Confufion and Difference of Opinion, the Rules being ill underftood, and never perfectly applicable to Harmony, which was not at all tafted by the Greeks, or old Romans. And this Confufion arofe from mixing of the imperfect Greek Modulations, as every one may difcern, by examining the above-mentioned Tones of the Church, whofe middle and final Cadences are almoft all imperfect and improper for true harmonical Combination and Progreffion; as may be feen in the $\mathcal{T}_{e}$ Deum printed in the Edition of the feven Greek Authors publifhed at Amferdam by Meibomius.

In the eleventh Century it may be faid, that the Art of Mufic entered from its Childhood into Youth, under the Tuition and Direction of a Benedictine Monk, the aforementioned Guicio Aretino, fo named from being of the City of Arezzo, in Tufcany.

He, in the firft Place, reformed the abovefaid greateft Syftem of the Grecks, as being incongruous with Harmony, of which he feems to have been the firf that had any Knowledge, and diftinguifhed it from Melody, as will be feen below.

The Order of the abovefaid greateft Syftem could ferve for no other Purpofe almoft, but fimple Melody.

As to the firft Syftem of the feven Strings, or Tetrachord conjunct, it began with the Chord Hypate ( $B$ of the prefent Syftem) diftant a Semitone from the next Chord lefs grave Parhypate (now C.) This B could not fubfift either as a firft principal Note or Sound, or as a Final, fince, being diftant a Semitone from its following Note, it could not be accented; it being neceffary to have the Accent fall upon a Note, between which and the next Note above it there is an entire Tone. This any one may try by folfaing the Scale; for he will find, that Mi , which is a Semitone diftant from Fa, will naturally pafs to, and reft itfelf upon the fame Fa, upon which Fa , as an accented Note, the Melody perfectly terminates. The final Note can only happen to be Mi, as a fecondary Note in the harmonic fundamental Combination, and by Way of Sufpenfion of the Harmony, as in a fufpended Cadence, but never as a principal Note of Harmony. There muft be an Interval of a Semitone between the principal Note of the Scale, and an Interval of a full Tone between the principal Note of the Scale, and the next higher Note, it being neceffary for the Melody to proceed by thefe two Intervals, to fall upon the principal Note of the Scale; as clearly appears in the Cadences in four Parts, where the Bafs defcends a Fifth, or afcends a Fourth, the Mi Semitone, which makes the third to the Bafs, afcends to the Octave, and the fuperior Part, which ferves as a perfect Fifth to the fame Bafs Note, defcends a full Tone to the Octave of the Bafs, or may afcend to the third; confequently the Note Hypate, or B, diftant but a Semitone from its next Acute Note, can only ferve as a third Harmonic to the fundamental Note; and the next Note fuperior to this harmonic Third, muft have an Interval of a full Tone between it and the Note next above it, which muft anfwer the Purpofe of a perfect Fifth to the fundamental Bafs, in order that the faid Fifth and Third may fall together, in Confonance, into the principal Note of the Octave.

Now the Syftem beginning with the Chord Proflambanomenos, the firft deep Note of the greateft Syftem, fucceeds much worfe in refpect of Harmony. This Syftem being far from the true natural Order, called by the Greeks the Diatonic, the Note Proflambanomenos (which is A in the modern Scale) can be neither Principal nor Middle, neither can it ferve as an Harmonic Note to the Principal, nor to its fundamental fifth Note, in its firf Order of Combination. The principal Note of a Scale, which ferves as a Syftem,
ought to be confidered as the Mother of all the Sounds attending it, they being all included in it, and its confonant Octave above; and the fifth, its intermediate Sound, being confonant 'with the faid principal Note, is the Guide that directs the Progreffion, by afcending or defcending a Fifth, and at laft conducts the Harmony to its Principal; as will be more fully explained in its Place, in the following Book.

A Scale of Sounds, which are not ftable, but fubject to vary, can never be a natural Syftem of Sounds, which ought to be fixed and unalterable. The Chord Proflambanomenos, o: A, which ftands at the Head of the faid greateft Syftem, has its third Sound naturally fiat ; and in defcending an Octave from A to A, the fixth and feventh are both naturally flat; but in afcending the fixth and feventh, muft both be altered a Semitone higher, without which the Octave cannot be afcended gradually; confequently here would be required two Scales, one for afcending, and the other for defcending.

The Melody can very eafily defcend the Octave from A Acute to A below, by a natural, or Diatonic Gradation, but then in afcending to the faid A Acute, you can never arrive there, without changing the fixth and feventh Sounds a Semitone higher; for the Diftance between the feventh and Octave can never be more than a Semitone, in the natural Order. Therefore a Scale, which has its third Scund diftant from the firft one Tone, and one Semitone, that is a third Minor, cannot be the natural Scale, becaufe the fourth Note muft have alfo the Minor Third, which muft be altered in afcending the Scale. From hence it is clear, that in the true natural Scale, the principal Note muft have its third Sound at the Dinance of two Tones, that is of a greater Third; from whence it follows, that the Sixth comes to be a greater Sixth, which fixth Note ferves for a greater Third to the fourth Note, which always has its third Note fimilar to that of the Principal ; that is greater, if it be greater ; and lefs, if it be lefs. So likewife the feventh Note, which ferves for a greater, or Major Third to the middle Note the Fifth, which is the fundamental Guide, ought to be greater ; and in this Manner the Scale remains unalterable, and the principal Note of it muft eafily be known; for fince in the natural Scale there are only three Notes, which have the greater Thirds, one of thefe three muft be the Principal ; but then as the Principal muft have not only the greater Third, but alfo the perfect Fourth, perfect Fifth, and greater Seventh; the Fourth, though it has a Major Third, perfect Fifth, and greater Seventh, neverthelefs, as its Fourth is not juft, but falfe, cannot be a Principal.

In like Manner the fifth Note, though it has a Major Third, and perfect Fourth and Fifth, yet, as the Seventh is Minor, it cannot be a principal Note of the Scale. From whence it is evident, that the principal Note of the natural Scale muft be the Note C, or Parhypate ; and that the Greek Syftems, both the old one of feven Strings, and the greateft, or immoveable, were ill difpofed, beginning with the Chord Hypate, or B, in the firft Syftem, and the Chord Proflambanomenos, or A in the greateft Syftem.

It is manifeft, from what has been faid, that Guido Aretino had good Reafon for reforming the ancient Syftem, by annexing a new Sound to the old deep one, which new Sound he called Gamma (the prefent G) being diftant a Tone, in Depth, from the Prollambanomenos of the ancient greatef Syftem.

He did not increafe the Number of Sounds, by adding the Note G, for the Sake, as fome have imagined, of perpetuating by that Letter, his own Name, Guido, as the Inventor of this Syftem; neither did he do it, as others have more modeftly afferted, to preferve the Memorial of the Commencement of Mufic in Greece. It was not owing to thefe Caufes, we fay, but to pure Neceffity, which obliged him to put the Scale in fuch Order, as would beft anfwer the Purpofe of Harmony; and if he began not the Scale by its true principal Sound, which is C, it was probably owing to his Difinclination to change the whole Urder of Letters of the Alphabet, as eftablinhed by Pope Gregory, or perhaps to his Vencration for him. However, beginning with the Letter $G$, he obtained the lower

Octave of G, the middle Sound of the natural Scale, and the Guide of Progreffion in the fame Scale; and he obtained alfo along with it the Octave Sound of the feventh Note B, which ferved him for a greater Third to the fame G; and by this Means the Harmonic Order was preferved.

Guido not only mended the old greater Syftem, but he alfo introduced fix Monofyllables, in order therewith to learn and practife the Art of Singing. Thefe Monofyllables were ut, re, mi, fa, fol, la, which, it is faid, he took from a Struphe, or Stanza, of a Latin Hymn, written in Honour of St. Fobn Baptijt, of which he chofe the firft and fixth Syllables of every Verfe, as is here feen.
Ut queant Laì ${ }_{人}^{x}$ Refonare fibris,
3 Mira gefforum Famuli tuorum
5 Solve polluti Labii reatum.

Sancte Johannes.
It was ablerved above, that the firft Letters of the Roman Alphabet were employed in the ancient Syftem ; and that thofe were afterwards reftrained by Pope Gregory to the firft feven. Thefe ferved the Purpofe of learning to fing, by applying to its correfpondent Note the Letter that denominated it. But Guido perhaps obferving, that thofe Letters expreffed the Progreffion of the Sounds in a very indiftinct Manner, by Reafon, that in pronouncing each Confonant, the Letter E is fubjoined thereto, as, $\mathrm{BE}, \mathrm{CE}, \mathrm{DE}, \mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{c}} \mathrm{c}$. at every Sound, however different they were, nothing was heard but a Repetition of the fame Termination, except when the Note fell upon the Letter A, and that this Uniformity, or Similiarity of Terminations, could not but breed Confufion; and obferving, perhaps, in reciting the Office employed on the Feftival of St. Fobn Baptift, that the firt and fixth Syllable of the firf Strophe of the above-mentioned Hymn, contained all the five Italian Vowels, he thought proper to make Choice of them, and by their Means to render the Sounds more diftinct in going through them with the Voice. But as the faid fix Monofyllables were to be affigned to the eight Notes, or Sounds of the Scale, by which Means, in afcending from the loweft to the higheft, two of them muft neceffarily be repeated.

Therefore he diftinguifhed them by thefe different Stations, every one containing a Scale of fix gradual Sounds; and he called thefe different Scales by the Greek Name Hexachord, (that is, a Succeffion of fix Sounds) as the Greeks called the different Partitions of their Syftems in four Strings, or Sounds, Tetrachords, as mentioned before.

The firft Hexachord began with the Note Gamma, or $G$, comprehending G, A, B, C, $\mathrm{D}, \mathrm{E}$, and this he called the Hexachord of B Durum, or B natural.

The fecond Hexachord began with the Note C, (being the fourth Note of his Syftem) and comprehended C, D, E, F, G, A; and this he called the natural Hexachord.

The third Hexachord began with the Note F, the feventh Note in his Syftem, and comprehended the Notes, F, G, A, Bb, C, D ; and this he called the Hexachord of B Mole, becaufe the fourth Note of the Scale mult be altered with a B Mole, or Flat.

For the better Diftinction of thefe Hexachords, he annexed to the Letters, which were already appropriated to the Notes of his Syftem, the fix different Monofyllables, which, according to the Change of their Situation, they have in the three different Hexachords.

Thus to the Letter afcribed to the deepeft Note Gamma, he annexed $u t_{\text {, }}$ and called it Gammut.

To the lecond Letter he annexed Re, and called it A re.
To the third Letter B , he annexed $m i$, and called it $B m i$.
To the fourth Note C, he annexed the Syllables $F a$ and $u t$, and callod it $C F a u t$, namely, $f a$ as the fourth Note belonging to the Hexachord of Gammut ; and ut as the firt Note of the Hexachord of C.

To the following Note D, he annexed the Syllables $S o l$ and $R e$, and called it $D$, fol, re, namely, Sol as the fifth Note in the Hexachord of Gammut, and $R e$, as the fecond Note of the Hexachord of C.

To E, the next Letter, he annexed the Syllables $L a$ and $M i$, and called it $E l a m i$, namely $L a$, as the fixth and laft Note of the firft Hexachord G, and $M i$ as the third Note .of the fecond Hexachord of C.

F, the following Letter in Acute, was called $F a$, when confidered as the fourth Note of the Hexachord of C, and ut as the firft Note of the third Hexachord F, and together was named, $F, f a$, ut.

The next Letter $G$ was called $G, f o l, r e, u t$. Sol as the fifth Note in the Hexachord of C, Re, as the fecond Note in the Hexachord of FF, and $u t$ as the firft Note of its own Hexachord, which is a Repetition of the firft Hexachord of Gammut, an Octave higher.

The next Letter A was named $A, L a, m i$, re, namely $L a$, as the fixth Note in the fecond Hexachord of C, Mi as the third Note in the third Hexachord of F, and re as the fecond Note in the fourth Hexachord G.

The following Letter B , was called $B, f a, m i$; $M i$ as the third Note of the fourth Hexachord G, which being a Repetition (as before faid) of the firf Hexachord Gammut, is confequently of the B durum Claffe; and $F a$, as it is the fourth Note in the OCtave of the third Hexachord F, which is in the Clafs of $b$ Mole, becaufe the fame Letter B being durum, or natural, would exceed, by a Semitone, the perfect and juft Fourth, in the above Hexachord of F ; confequently B muft be diminifhed a Semitone with a $b$ Mole to make it a perfec. Fourth; as has been explained before, in the Defcription of the third Tetrachord of the greateft Greek Syftem.

The other following Letters are named and difpofed in the Manner clearly defcribed in the fixth and feventh Examples, Plates II. and III. both containing feven fucceffive Hexachords. By the Means above-mentioned, the ancient greatef Syftem was augmented with the Note Gamma in the Grave, and with five Notes more in Acute, as appears in Plate III. Example VII. And this Augmentation was neceflary for the proper Diftribution into the divers Scales belonging to the different Parts, Grave, Middle, and Acute, in Harmonic Compofitions.

By the Help of the above Monofyllables, applied to the forementioned Hexachords; Guido taught his Difciples to ftudy and practife the Art of Singing. And, for a better Help to the Memory, he difpofed the fame Hexachords, in their Order, upon the left Hand, as is fhewn in the fixth Example, Plate II. above-mentioned, explaining the divers Mutations in afcending and defcending the whole Scale. In afcending the Scale, the deepeft Note Gama, or G, was called Ut ; A, the fecond Note, Re ; B, the third Note, $M i$; C, the fourth Note of the fame Hexachord of G, was called Fa; D, the following Note, Sol; and E, the laft Note of the fame Hexachord, $L a$, when they proceeded no higher; but if they went on afcending to F, D was called $R e, \mathrm{E} m i, \mathrm{~F} . F a, \mathrm{G} \mathrm{Sol}$, and A $L a$; and, proceeding higher, G was called $R e, A m i$, B being flat $F a$, C Sol, and D $L a$; but afcending to the next Note E, D was called $R e, E M i, F \operatorname{Fa}, \mathrm{G}$ Sol, and A
$L a$; and proceeding to the next Notes ftill more acute, A was called $R e, B m ;$ the reft in the fame Order as above explained, changing the firft Hexachord into the fecond, the fecond into the third, the third into the fourth, $\mathcal{E}^{\circ} c$. and when thefe Hexachords, or the whole Scale, is tranfpofed higher or lower, the general Rule is, that the Note which is marked with a Diefis, or Sharp, muft be called Mi , the next below it $R e$, and the Note next above it Fa. On the contrary, when a Note is contra marked with a $b$ Mole, or flat, that Note muft be called Fa, confequently the Note next below it $M i_{\text {z }}$ and the Note next above it Sol, in afcending the Scale by a fharp Third, and $R e$ in afcending by a flat Third.

By the Help of the different Applications of the above Monofyllables to the Notes, every one learned how to diftinguifh immediately the Scales, in all the Tranfpofitions that might happen; a Method of Practice which continues to this Day in Italy, under the Name of Solfaing, and in fome other Countries, with fome Variation.

The Monofyllable Ut was afterwards changed into Do; bccaufe that in the Italiart Pronounciation, the Sound of the Vowel $U$ is not thought fo pleafing and agreeable, nor fo proper for Mufic.

Guido alfo changed the ancient Manner of writing Mufic. The Method before was to ufe the Letters of the Alphabet, by which the feveral Notes of the Scale were diftinguifhed; and to write them all upon one Line, one after another, in Length, as mentioned by Boctius. But Guido fubftituted in their Place certain Points difpofed upon, and between, four Lines, and afterwards five, from whence came the Name of Counterpoint, in Compofition of Mufic, and prefixed, at the Beginning of one of the Lines, one of the Letters, by which all the Points upon and between every Line were regulated and afcertained. For Example, the Letter C being placed at the Beginning of any Line, the Point upon that Line was called and efteemed the Note C, the Point in the Space next it was D, the Point on the next Line E; and fo the reft in Sequence. So in defcending, the firft Point, or Note, in the Space next below the Line, marked with C, was B, that on the Line next below $A$, and fo from Space to Line, the others followed progreffively; and when any other Letter was placed upon any of the Lines, the Point upon that Line was the Note or Sound denominated by that Letter; and all the Points upon the Lines and Spaces above and below were reckoned from the Line marked with the Letter, fo that, from any Letter placed upon any Line, the Order of the Scale, both higher and lower, was immediately known.

But the greateft Improvement which Guido made in the Science of Mufic, was the Introduction of Harmony, by joining it to Melody, and forming therewith different Compofitions of two, three, and four Parts. Thefe Parts confifted of different Notes, varying in their Order, one amongft another, but united harmonioufly together, fo as to afford infinite Pleafure to the Ear. This Harmony was as fimple as poflible, confifting only of a Combination of the firft or principal Note, with its Third, Fifth, and Octave, which he difpofed in the moft agreeable and harmonious Manner. Guido adapted this Harmony to the Chants, or Tones of the Church.

He alfo publifhed a Treatife of Mufic under the Title of Micrologus, with his Introductorizm, and alfo an Antipbonaicum, for the Ufe of the Church; for which Cardinal Baronus, in his Annals, inferted the following remarkable Note.

[^1]trigefimo quarto, edidit de Mufica Librum, quem Micrologum nuncupatun delicavit Theobaldo
Epijcopo Aretino.
All thefe Improvements, which Guido introduced, extending themfelves, by Degrees, from Italy into the other Chritian Kingdoms, and States of Europe, were generally received by the whole Church; and thus the Precentors, or Mafters of the Choir, in every particular Church, who before had only taught the Chant Choral, called Canius Firmus, or Gregorian Chant, laid themfelves out to become Imitators of Guido; and purfuing his Rules, to grow even Compofers; every one ftriving not only to join Parts, in an harmonical Way, to the Cantus Firmus, or Gregorian Chant, but even to devife, and invent new Tones, or Specimens of Melody: Infomuch, that by the Eafe and Facility of Solfaing, Melody itelf made great Advances, and became greatly varied from the ancient Greek and Roman Manner.

However, the Melody of this Age being compofed of Notes folong, that one of them fometimes ferved for a whole Period, the new Improvements, which were daily making, required the breaking of thofe long Notes into fhorter Times and Meafures; fo that the original Notes and Points introduced by Guido, were daily found to be infufficient for the Purpofe of writing and exprefling the new invented Strains.

To remedy this Defect, an Advocate of the Parliament of Paris, called $\mathcal{F}$ obn de Muris, who was a Lover of Mufic, and flourihed in the fourteenth Century, invented certain new Notes or Characters, by which the different Lengths, or Times of Sounds, might be commodioufly expreffed, which proved of great Advantage and Benefit towards the farther Improvement of Melody.

Thefe Marks, or CharaCters of Mufic, were of different Figures, to denote the different Length of the Time, and formed in the Manner defcribed in Plate IV. Example VIII. Fig. $1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9$, and 10 .

The firft Characters, Figure I, was called Maxima, and contained two Longs: The Long (defcribed in the fecond Fig.) contained two Breves: The Breve (third Fig.) two Semibreves: The Semibreve (fourth Fig.) two Minims: The Minim (fifth Fig.) two Semiminims, or Crotchets: The Semi-minim (Fig. 6.) two Chromas or Quavers (Fig. 7.) And in Procefs of Time the Semi-chroma, or Semi-quaver, two of which make one Chroma, or Quaver; and afterwards Bifchroma, or Hemifemi-quaver, two of which make one Semi-chroma, or Semi-quaver, and a Note equal to half of the triple Bifchroma, were added, as in the Fig. 8, 9, and 10.

Under the above Notes are hewn the correfpondent Marks, which ferve to indicate the Times and Meafures which the particular Parts are to obferve, in refting or joining with the others; each of the Marks exprefling the fame Number of Meafures as its correfponding Note, namely, the Note called Maxima, and its correfponding Reft, contain eight Meafures: The Long in the fecond Fig. and its correfponding Reft, contain four Meafures : The Breve two Meafures, the Semi-breve one Meafure ; the Minim half a Meafure; the Semi-minim a Quarter of a Meafure ; the Chroma half a Quarter ; eight Chromas, fixteen Semi-chromas, and thirty-two Bifchromas being contained in one Meafure; as appears in the Figurcs $1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10$, Plate IV.

Now, by Means of thefe Meafures, the Time was divided into two, four, and eight Parts : But then there being apparently an Occafion for a Meafure, which fhould divide the Time into three Parts; therefore the Meafures were diftinguifhed into two Sorts; namely, of common Time and triple Time. In the common or ordinary Time, marked as in Plate V. Example IX. each Meafure is divided into four Parts, except in the Alla Breve, in which each Meafure, containing one Breve, is divided in two Parts: The fame for the Time a Capella, or Chapel Time, which contains one Semi-breve, or two Minims.

Befides thefe Marks, there have been added to the Character, that diftinguifhed the common Time, called the ordinary Time, the following other Marks, $\frac{2}{4}, \frac{4}{8}, \frac{5}{8}, \frac{7}{8}$, reprefented in the above Plate V. Example IX.

The firft containing two Semi-minims, or four Chromas; the fecond four Chromas, or cight Semi-chromas ; the third fix Semi-chromas, and the laft twelve Semi-chromas.

In the triple Time the ancient Marks have been difcarded; and at prefent there are but three Sorts, whereof the firft is $\frac{2}{2}$, the fecond $\frac{3}{4}$, the third $\frac{3}{8}$, by which is meant, that the firft contains one Semi-breve, and one Minim, or three Mirrims; the fecond three Semi-minims, and the third three Chromas. There are in Ufe alfo other Signs, or Figures, which partake, as it were, of both the common and tiple Time: Thete are reprefented thus, $\frac{6}{4}, \frac{6}{8}$, and may be divided into three, and into two Times, which is to be found by the Accent of the Notes in their Progreflion, The firft Mark generally ferves for triple Time, the fecond exprefies rather common Time, to reit, when they are Semichromas tied together by three; for when they are all tied together; they appertain to triple Time.

To thefe Notes alfo; when it was neceffary, was added a Point, which fignified, that the Note to which the Point was added, was to be lengthened or increafed with half its own Value; for Example, if to the Note called a Breve, a Point was added, it was to be held out a Semi-breve longer'; and fo a Chroma with a Point obtained the Length of a Chroma, and of a Semi-chroma; and fo of the reft. Under the Example of the above Signs or Marks of the different Time, in the fame fifth Plate, are reprefented all the different Notes, which belong to each of the fame Marks.

Monfieur do Muris changed alfo the Letters which Guido Aretino ufed to place at the Beginning of the Lines, whereon the Notes were written; and inftead of them, he invented three Signs, or Characters, which were placed in like Manner at the Beginning of the five Lines. Thefe were of three different Forms, as may be feen in the fame fifth Plate, Example X.

One was called the Key of F, and was to ferve for the Bafs; the other the Key of C; which ferved for the middle and higher Voices; and the third was called the Key of G, and ferved for Inftruments of the higheft Sound.

The Key of $F$ was differenced according to the two Lines whereon it was placed. If that Key appeared on the fecond Line from the uppermoft, it ferved for the Bafs; but if it was found on the middle Line, it ferved for the Baffe called Baritono.

The Key of C ferved for four middle and acute Voices. The firft on the fecond Line from the Top was the Key for the Tenor, which is the Voice next above the Baritono. If the fame Key C, was placed on the middle Line, it ferved for the Contralto or Countertenor, which is next above the Tenor. But, if it was placed in the fourth Line from the Top, it ferved for the fecond Soprano or Treble ; and when placed on the laft or loweft Line, for the firft Soprano or Treble.

The third Key was called the Key of G, which was for the ufe of the moft acute Infruments, and was placed on the fourth Line from the Top and the loweft Line.

Each of thefe Keys is diftant from the next Key to it a Third ; and all of them, except three, continue in Ufe to this Day.

The three that are in fome Meafure difufed are the Key of F on the middle Line, called the Baritono; the Key of C on the loweft Line but one, for the fecond Treble; and the Key of $G$ upon the laft Line, for the Ufe of the moft acute Kind of Inftruments. Thefe
have been difcarded; becaufe the others, which are retained, are fufficient for the Purpofe of common Mufic in four, five, and fix Parts. But neverthelefs in the more folemn Mufic of the Church, compofed for two and more Choruffes, in eight and fixtecn real Parts, they are all ftill made ufe of, and particularly for four Choruffes, where they are neceffary for the commodious Diftribution of the Parts.
-In the above fifth Plate, under the Example X, are expreffed the Marks of the Repeats, Directs, © c. of which there is no need to enter into a diftinct Enumeration and Explanation in this Place, the Infpection of the Example, where they are clearly reprefented, being fufficient for the Information of every Reader.

Aftci thefe Inventions of Jobn de Muris, Mufic was daily improving, not only in Melody, but even in Harmony itfelf. And as divers Inftruments, the beft adapted to Mufic, were now more commonly ufed than they had been, namely Harpfichords, Viols, Violins, Tenors; and Bafs-Violins, $\mathcal{E c} c$. and as thefe derived from the Voice the fweeteft and moft pathetic Melody, fo on the other Hand, the Voices acquired from them, as being the moft ready and eafy in the Execution; the Diminutions of the different Notes, in Airs and other quick and lively Movements; infomuch that the Vocal Performers and Inftrumental, Atriving to outdo each other, they have by Degrees arrived at that Perfection, which at this Day we have the Pleafure of hearing. The good Effect of this Emulation appears more eminently in Inftrumental Performances. For Skill and Ability in Inftrumental Mufic depends folely upon Genius, and Inclination affifted by Application, and intenfe Practice: But to excel in Vocal Mufic, befides a natural Genius for Mufic; there muft be not only Practice and Application, but alfo an admirable Voice, which is very uncommon. And this we apprehend to be the Reafon that in this Age we find fo many more excellent Inftrumental Performers, than we do Singers; which neverthelefs is recompenced to us by Nature herfelf; fince, generally fpeaking, a moderate Singer always pleafes more, than the beft Hand upon an Inftrument, the Voice being the beft Inftrument becaufe it is natural; and confequently nitore pleafant than any artificial one whatfoever.

Moreover Harmony itfelf gained confiderable Advantages, by the Improvements in Melody. It was obferved, that in the Dimunition of Notes, Sounds were found out, which contributed much to the pleafing of the Ear, and that many of thofe Dimunitions might be performed upon a fimple Ground, not only in their proper Situation, but alfo out of it, and even reverfed. For Example, it was perhaps obferved that the feventh of the fifth Note of every Octave or Scale whatfoever, never failed to pleafe whenfoever it was properly introduced; and that not only when it was conbined with the fundamental Note, or Ground in the Bafs, but alfo with the firft Natural, and fimple Chords of the principal Note of the Scale; infomuch, that if they were reverfed amongft themfelves, and even if the fundamental Bafs was tranfpofed into the intermediate, or middle Sounds, they ftill afforded a perfect Harmony, by being refolved into the following Sound. This feventh Sound was therefore introduced; and from thence there fprung the Chords of the greater Fourth, the falfe Fifth, and the greater Sixth; the Chord of the perfect Fourth and Sixth; which proceeds from the perfect Chords of the principal Note of the Scale, having before been difcovered by Guido Aretino.

From the aforefaid Seventh of the fifth fundamental Note; they paffed afterwards to the Sevenths of the other Sounds of the natural Scale ; which being firft introduced into the Harmony, by the firft fimple Combination, which in the proper mufical Term is called Preparation, were alfo found to be pleafing to the Ear, by paffing into another fimple Accord, called by Muficians, Refolution.

From the feventh they proceeded to the ninth Note of the principal Scale, or the Note next above the Octave of the fame Principal: Though the Relation of the Ninth to the Ground Note, was not perfectly underfood, becaule few Compofers are practifed in Writing
in eight or more real Parts, but only in four or five Parts; where the fundamental Ninth paffes under another Denomination, almoft continually; and confequently has a different Preparation and Refolution, becaufe the Bafs is not found in its true Place. Alfo finding by the Example of the fundamental Sevenths, that even the Ninths (though under the Name of a Second, falfe Fifth, or Seventh diminifhed) became harmonical and pleafing, they were admitted in Time into the harmonic Combination.

Now, by Means of thefe added Sounds, or Notes, which amongft Muficians go by the Name of Difcords prepared and refolved, Mufical Compofitions became, as they are at this Day, the Subject of Study and Labour ; there being compofed Canons, Fugues, and Imitations, fingle and double, of different Subjects united together, which conftitute the moft agreeable Study, but require great Practice and Application.

From the Middle of the laft Century to the prefent Time, the harmonic Art has arrived at its Ne plus ultra; and the Method of forming a Compofition with an Union of all the Eight primary Sounds of any Scale whatfoever, hath been found out, and is practifed in Italy in the grand and folemn Compofitions for the Church for eight real Voices, doubled and trippled, in two diftinct Choruffes, without Inftruments, and for fixteen Parts alfo doubled and trippled, in four feparate Choruffes, as ufed in the great Church of Milan, called the Domo.

The Rules for thofe Compofitions will be made very clear and intelligible by Means of the Canons or Rules of the harmonic Code, in the fecond Book.

Thus we have given a Chort Hiftory of the Progrefs of Mufic, from the Time it was firft introduced into Greece by their Poets, fo far as we think neceffary for the underftanding of the different Terms, Modes, $E^{\circ} c$. gradually introduced and practifed from thence unto the prefent Time; and to lead the Reader into the more ready Acquaintance with the enfuing Treatife on the Harmonic Art.


D ELL'



# D E L L' <br> ARTE ARMONICA: <br> O R, 

A Treatise of the Compofition of MUSIC. B OOK I.

Containing the general and particular Definitions and Divifions of the Whole Harmonic Art, the Modern Syftem of Sounds, with Two New Syftems of Combination of Sounds, and their Progreffion, formed by the Author.

To which are added,
All the SCALES arifing from the above S Y STEMS.

## C H A P. I.

The Definition of Mufic in general, and its Divifions.

## Articte I.



HE Word MUSIC has been applied to many and various Subjects; but, in this Treatife, it fignifies no more than a Succeffion of Sounds in themfelves agreeable and properly expreffed, which alone, or differently combined, in changing from low to high, or from flow to quick Movement, or vice verfa, delights and gives Pleafure; confequently the Sounds are the Matter of Mufic ; the Difpofition of thofe Sounds, either alone, or combined in a pleafing Succeffion, is the Art and the End to affect the Paffions with agreeable Senfations, which become more or lefs fo, not only from the Degree of Perfection the Art is arrived at, but alfo from the different Conftitutions and Habits of the Auditors, as remarked in the Introduction.

## Of the Divifon of Mufic.

## Article II.

WE fhall firt divide Mufic into Melody and Harmony, and this regards in general every Species of it. Afterwards we fhall diftinguifh it into Vocal, Inftrumental, and Local, from being ufed in the Church, Theatre, Chamber, $\mathcal{E}^{\circ}$ c. every one of thefe having fome particular Rules, over and above the common Rules relative to Harmony, which particular Rules will be explained in the laft Book.

## Of Melody and its Divifion.

## Article III.

EVERY Tone, Air, or Song, formed by Progreffion of different Sounds, but following alone one after another, or by two or more finging the fame Sound, is called Melody. This may be divided into Natural and Artificial, but both are the Daughters of Nature.

The Natural is deprived of every Ornament, and is not fubject to any Rules, being practifed by People ignorant of Mufic.

The Artificial, on the contrary, is improved and adorned by the Harmonic Art, to which it is made a Companion, proceeding together by fixed Rules, excepting where Invention is concerned, which depends almoft entirely upon Nature.

## Of Harmony.

Article IV.

THE Antient Writers of Mufic, as many Moderns, call the different Ratios of the fuppofed Intervals of the Sounds, by the Word Harmony. So Euclides in his Introduction to the Harmonic Art ; the fame by Gaudentius the Philofopher, as by Nicomacus the Scholar of Pytbagoras. Ptolomy defines the Harmony, a Knowledge of the Difference of the Sounds in regard to their Acutenefs or Gravity: The fame by Zerlino in his, Inftitutions and Demonftrations Harmonic; alfo Huygens calls his Cyclo Harmonic in his Cofmotheoros, Dechales, Cotas, Wallis, Malcombe, and of late Mr. Eular in his Tentatem Nove Theorie Mufice; fo Dr. Smith, Head of Trinity-College, Cambridge, in his learned Book intitled, The Harmonic. All, and many others, have ufed the Word Harmony to be applied to the Ratios of the above fuppofed Interval betwixt the different Sounds. But in this Treatife, where the Sounds are not confidered in the Ratios of their fuppofed Intervals, but only in the immediate Effect, which alone, or combined in their Progreffion, produce into the Senfation; we fhall define, that Harmony is a Product of the Progreffion of two, three, or more different or diffonant Sounds (diftinctly perceived by the Senfation) joined together and artificially combined. We fay, a Progreffion of different and diffonant Sounds together combined, becaufe a fimple Combination of Sound, without Progreffion, cannot be called a compleat Harmony, being no more than a Beginning of Harmony, which fignifies nothing, as a fimple Word is not a Difcourfe, or an Oration, but only a Part.

## Of the Divifon of Harmony.

Article V.

HARMONY muft be divided into Fundamental and Figurate, both Daughters of the Art: The Fundamental is the only practical Theory of the Harmonic Art ; it is
diftinguifhed from all other Mufical Compofitions by the Name of fundamental Counterpoint, which is fo called from Points, inftead of Notes, being applied; and fundamental, becaufe properly it is the Foundation of the Harmony ; as the Bafs Part, which is the loweft of all the other Parts, is alfo called fundamental, for being the Harmony regulated by its different Motions. By this fundamental Counterpoint are compofed fevcral Examples, which we call Canons, into and by which are defcribed and explained all the Laws or Rules of the Harmonic Art, or of Compofition of Mufic, all ordinarily joined in one Harmonic Code, which will be explained in the next Book.

The figurate Harmony is ufually called by the Muficians the figurate Mufic, becaufe it is formed with divers Figures, Movements, and Times, at Pleafure ; but it is ftill fubject to the Laws and Rules which will be laid down in the Harmonic Code of the fundamental Harmony. The figurate Harmony may be a Compofition of two, three, four Parts, and as far as fixteen, and more real Parts joined together with Melody. The Explanation of this figurate Mufic, with its Divifions, and its Relations to the fundamental Harmony, will be made after we have digefted the Harmonic Laws, or Rules, prefcribed by the Harmonic Code, in the next Book.

# C H A P II. <br> Of the Mufical Sounds, their Definition, Number, and different Intervals. 

## The Definition.

Articie I.
2xativi T belongs to Phyfic to define and explain the Nature of Sound in what Manner it I Mufical Sounds, which are occafioned by the human Voice, or Inftruments proper for Mufic, muft be fweet and equal in all the Degree of Acutenefs, or Gravity, and confequently pleafant in themfelves; it being evident, that a bad, unequal, and ill-difpofed Voice, like a bad Fiddle, or all other Inftruments ill-tuned, or played, cannot afford any Pleafure, which is the very End and Defign of Mufic.

## Of the Number of Mufcal Sounds.

## Article II.

THERE are no more than eight original Sounds in Mufic; but thefe Sounds may be tranfpofed more acute, or more grave, ftill retaining the fame Number and Order ; and tho' the Intervals may be infinitely divided, fo as to comprehend all 'poffible Sound, yet the Octave of every Divifion will have a fimilar Sound, either grave or acute, and by Octaves may be multiplied at Pleafure, as was mentioned in the Introduction.

## Of the different Intervals of the eight original Sounds.

Articte III.
diftinguifhed the Intervals of the Sounds of the firft Diatonic Syftem of the Tetrachord conjoined, by the Names of Tone Major, Tone Minor, and Semitone: Afterwards in their Syftem called the greateit and unchangeable, they were obliged to divide the Interval of the Major Tone, between the Chords Mefe and Paramefe (that is, A, B, in the modern Syftem) in order to add a new Sound, which was called Trite Synemmenon (now called B flat) this new Sound was the firft Note of the third Tetrachord, which was added conjoint to the two firft ; by this Addition was fuppofed, that the Intervals of the fame third Tetrachord arofe in the fame Order as in the firft and fecond, beginning with a Semitone: From the above Divifion has arifen the fuppofed Difference of the Semitone in Major and Minor, confifting of one Comma, to zwit, the Major Semitone five Cominas; and the Minor four; as from the Chord Mefe, or A, to the added Chord Trite Synemmenon, or B flat, five Commas, and from the fame Trite Synemmenon to Paramefe, or B natural, four Commas; fo from Paramefe to the Chord Trite Diezeugmenon, or C, five Commas, confequently a Major Tone from Trite Synemmenon, to Trite Diezeugmenon, which Difference in Major and Minor was not confidered by the Pytbagoreans, nor by the Follower of Ariftoxenzs; the Pytbaooreans confidering all the Tones of the greateft Syftem, as Major of nine Commas, and the Semitones all of four Commas, which makes the Pytbagorean Lima, as has been told in the Introduction, and the Followers of Ariftoxenus, by which were calculated the Tones in twelve Parts, and the Emitones, or Semitones, in fix Parts, confequently all equal, and is more than probable, that the above Difference in Major and Minor Tones, and Semitones, was never confidered in Practice. The above greateft, and unchangeable Syftem, was divided into Semitones by Arifoxenus, which certainly is the beft of the Greeks who have wrote in Mufical Matters, and in that Manner he diftinguifhed his fifteen Modes by the Diateffaron, or perfect Fourth, which is formed by equal Semitones, as has been feen in his Diagrama, Example V. Plate I. mentioned in the. Introduction. If thefe Semitones had been fuppofed not equal, the Diateffarons, by which the fame fifteen Modes were compofed, fhould have been partly imperfect, being evident, that the Minor Tones being divided into two Minor Semitones, and the Major Tones in one Major, and one Minor Semitone, confequently fome of the fame Diateffaron muft be formed by different Semitones, in regard to their Latitude. But after the happy Invention of Harmony, and the great Progrefs which Mufic has made, particularly from the laft Century to this Day, it is now evident, and clearly demonftrated by Experience (as will appear in the following Books) that the Divifion of the Tones and Semitones into Major and Minor, is inconfiftent both with Melody and Harmony, and never fubfifted, but only in the Imagination of the Authors, which followed the firf Divifion of the old Greck Syftem of the firft four Strings of the Lyre, and fucceffively of the feven Chords, called the conjoint Tetrachord, as has been done by Ptolomy, followed by Boetius, and by almoft ail the Authors which have treated of Mufic, till the prefent Time. But now in the prefent practical Syftem of the Mufical Sounds, all Sounds are divided by two Intervals, to wit, by equal Tones, and equal Semitones, thefe confidered as an half Part of the Tone; and the Tones being all divided into Semitones for Sake of the Tranfpofition of the two principal Scales, confequently the original eight Sounds are augmented to the Number of thirteen Sounds, divided by twelve Intervals of a Semitone each, as will appear in the following Chapter.

## C H A P. III.

## Of the new Modern and General Syftem of Sounds, and of the Names of its different Intervals.

Article I .

T is called a general Syftem, becaure it comprehends all other Syftems, Scales, and Divifions; it is alfo called the new Modern Syftem, to diftinguifh it from that of Guido, which was called the Modern Syftem, but now is called the old Modern Syftem of Guido: This new Modern Syfem is expreffed in Example I. Plate VI.

The firft loweft Sound of this Syftem is C, which might properly be called A, being the firft Letter of the Alphabet, as the Romans have already done to the firft Sound of the Greek Syfem : But as this Alteration would have changed all the old Notes or Letters applied to thefe Sounds in the Time of Boetius, and afterwards reftrained by Pope Gregory (as mentioned in the Introduction) it has not been made either by Guido; or in the prefent new Syftem; only the Order is different; by beginning with the Sound named C, inftead of the Sound named A, as the Romans have done, or with the Sound $G$; as Guido.

From the Principal and loweft Note named C; to the Sound D, its following Note, is an Interval of one Tone; alfo from D to E , is a like Interval; but from E to F , there is only a Semitone ; from $F$ to $G$, the fifth Sound, from $G$ to $A$, the fixth, and from A to B, the Seventh, is an Interval of a Tone each; and from B to $C$ the eighth Sound, which is the Octave of the firft principal Grave Sound of the Syftem, is the Diftance of a Semitone. This Syftern being formed of five Tones and two Semitones, as is expreffed in the firft Example, Plate VI. above-mentioned:

Of the various Names to the different Intervals of the above Sytem.

## Article II.

THE two Sounds, which are formed by the Interval of one Tone, is called a Major, or natural Second, as $\overparen{C, D}$. $\overparen{D, E}$. $\widehat{F}, G$. $\overparen{G, A}$. and $\overparen{A, B}$. as to $\overparen{E, F}$. and $\overparen{B, C}$. which are only diftant a Semitone; this Interval is called a Minor Second; the Whole of the Octave being compofed of five natural Seconds and two Minor, which is the fame as five Tones and two Semitones, mentioned in the laft Article: Two Semitones making a Tone; fo two Minor Seconds make a natural or Major Second:

$$
\bar{i}
$$

Two major Seconds following each other, as C, D, E. make an Interval called the ${ }_{3} \mathrm{Maj}$. natural Sharp, or major Third $\mathrm{C}_{\mathrm{C}} \mathrm{E}_{\mathrm{i}}$.

The Flat or Minor Third, is formed of one fecond Major and one Minor, as
 D, E, F, or E, F, G, making the Flat Natural, or Minor Third D, F, or E, G, or others' like.

The fourth Sound F, being diftant from the Principal C, two Major Seconds and one Minor, or two Tones and one Semitone, is called the perfect Fourth; as being confonant with the Octave of the principal Note.

The fhairp or falfe Fourth, is compofed of three Major Seconds, which is three Tones, as F to B , and are alfo called by Muficians, the Tritone.

Two Major Seconds, and two Minor, is the Interval called falfe or leffer Fifth, which is the fame as two Tones and two Semitones, or as the Tritone, as from B afcending to F.

The Interval of three Major Seconds and one Minor, or three Tones and one Semitone, as from the principal Note $\mathbf{C}$ to the fifth Note $G$, or from $D$ to $A$, whatfoever other Sounds of a like Interval is called the perfect Fifth, which is confonant with its grave Sound, as has been explained in the Introduction.

The Interval from C to A, which is the fixth Sound of the Syftem, or other like Interval, being formed by four Major Seconds and one Minor, or four Tones and one Semitone, is called the Major Sixth.

The Minor Sixth is compofed with three Major Seconds and two Minor, or three Tones and two Semitones, as from E to C afcending, or other like Interval.

The feventh Sound in this Syftem is B, which being diftant from the Principal C five Major Seconds and one Minor, or five Tones and one Semitone, therefore is called Major or fharp Seventh, as all other like Intervals.

It is called Minor Seventh, when formed by four Major Seconds and two Minor, or four Tones and two Semitones, as from D afcending to the C acute, or from the fifth Note $G$ to $F$, above the Octave, or other like Interval.

The laft Sound of this Syftem is the Eighth, which is called the Octave, and is the principal perfect Confonant after the Unifon; it is compofed by five Major Seconds and two Minor, or five Tones and two Semitones. All the abovefaid Intervals are within the Compars of the Octave.

But there are fome larger Intervals, which paffes the Limits of the Octave; the firft Two are called the Major and Minor Ninth ; the Major is compofed of fix Major Seconds and two Minor, or fix Tones and two Semitones, as from D grave to E acute in the fuperior Octave ; the Minor is compofed with five Major Seconds and three Minor, or five Tones and three Semitones, as from E grave to F acute of the fecond Octave.

The other fuperior Intervals of the following fuperior Octave, as the tenth, the eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and fifteenth, are confidered as being the Repetition of the third, fourth, fifth, fixth, feventh, and eighth; and fometime both Ninths are confidered as Seconds in the Compofitions of Figurate Mufic ; but in the fundamental Harmony they are calculated at thefe proper Diftances of ninth, tenth, eleventh, छic. and is only for the greater Facility of putting the fimple Figures of the Sounds belonging to the firf Octave, inftead of the double Ones.

Firf N.B. Befides the above explained Intervals, there are fome others, as the fecond fuperfluous or extreme Sharp; the fuperfluous Fifth, Sixth, and Octave; alfo the Seventh diminifhed, which not being concerned in the fundamental Harmony, will be explained in the laft Book of the figurate Harmony, being all thefe Sort of Combinations inverted of the fundamental.

Second N.B. The falfe Fifth before-mentioned, is the fame Interval as the falfe Fourth; the Difference is only for the Sake of the Names. B, in afcending to F, muft pafs C,D,E. which in all are five primary Sounds, namely B, C, D, E, F. which are the proper afigned Names to their refpective Sounds; and from $F$ afcending to $B$, are only four primary

Sounds, with thefe proper Names, F, G, A, B; one is called falfe Fifth, being a Semitone leffer than the perfect Fifth; and the other is called falfe, or Major Fourth, being compofed of one Semitone more than the perfect Fourth; but both the faid Sounds are in the fame Diftance of fix Semitones, or three Tones, which is the fame, as it is evident, confequently the Sounds, being in the fame Interyal; the Difference is only in being tranfpofed; the Grave in Acute, or vice verfa; but their Progreffion is always the fame, afcending one, and defcending the other,

Third N.B. All the above Intervals muft be diftinguifhed into confonant and diffonant: The Confonant are all the Unifons, Octaves, and perfect Fifths, as has been explained by Experience, in the Introduction, and all the other Intervals, as fecond, third, fourth, falfe fifth, fixth, feventh, Major and Minor, are diffonant, confequently cannot be called confonant, but only Harmonic; the Firft as confonant, being confidered as one Sound, cannot be called Harmonic, but only Melodic, and the diffonant, fo called, being diftinctly perceived by the Ears, when joined with the Confonant, made Harmonic the fame Confonant, as will clearly be explained in the Fifth Chapter of the Harmonic Syftem.

Fourth N.B. The abovefaid diffonant, or Harmonic Sounds, muft be confidered diftinctly, as Major, or tharp, and Minor, or flat, being their natural Progreflion different, the Major afcending, and the Minor defcending; but this Rule is altered on divers Occafions, as will appear by the Canons in the next Book:

# CHAP. IV. <br> Of the Confonant Divifion of the Syftem of Sounds, from which arifes the Confonant Syftem of Progreffion, or Modulation. 

Articie I.

yerer was defined in the firt Chapter, Article IV. that Harmony confifts in a 1 Progreffion of diffimilar and diffonant Sounds combined together. Thefe diffimilar and diffonant Sounds are diftinguifhed into Loweft, Low, Middle, Acute, and very Acute. The loweft Sound, which now becomes the Subject of this Article, is called the fundamental Bafs, which is always fuppofed to be lower by one Octave, than the common Bafs of the figurate Harmony ; and by being founded fo low, can only proceed by large and proportionate. Intervals : Experience fhews, that the Trumpets and Frenchborns, in the loweft Notes, can only proceed by Fifths or Fourths, whereas in the high Notes they may poceed not only by Toness but alfo by Semitones; the fame muft be fuppofed in the fundamental Bafs: Its moft natural Progreflion is to rife or fall a Fifth, or a Fourth, which produce the fame; rifing a Fifth, is the fame as falling a Fourth, and rifing a Fourth, is the fame as falling a Fifth, as will be demonftrated in its proper Place, with Examples.

Thefe two Movements, of Fifth defcending, and of Fifth afcending, arife from the confonant Divifion of the general Syftem of Sounds, by Means of the two middle Sounds, which divide the Syftem in two equal Parts, as in Example II. Plate VI. namely, C, principalSound to F, middle Sound; andG, alfo middle Sound to C Acute, the Octave of the
Principal being both Parts compofed of two Tones in the Grave, C, D, E, and a Semitone in Acute, E, F; alfo G, A, B, two Tones, and B, ${ }^{\frac{5}{2}}$ C, the Acute Semitone, making every one of the two faid Parts an Interval of a perfect Fourth; and G Bafis of
the Acute Foarth, forming the perfect confonant Fifth to C principal Bafis of the fiat Part ; fo $C$ the Octave, at the Top of the fecond Part, makes the confonant Fifth to $E$ iniddle Sound, at the Top of the firt Part, or Divifion.

From this Diviiion arifes our two fundamental Syftems, General and Natural; the general paffing through all the Semitones of the Scales of Tranfpofition, and the natural through the eight original Sounds of the natural Scale. Thefe two Syftems of Progreffion are alfo called Confonant Syftems, being formed by the two Confonant Fifths afcending and defcending, or by the Fourths, which are the Inverfion as before mentioned.

The firft of the above two Syftems which is defrribed in Plate VII. is called general, becaufe proceeding in its Courfe continually by perfect Fifths, it divides the Octave in all the Mufical Sounds which ferve to Harmony, being thirteen Sounds, divided by twelve fuppofed Intervals. The other, which is alfo defcribed in Plate VIII. is called the natural, becaufe its Progreffion proceeds only on the eight Primary Sounds of the natural Scale, and in that Progreffion muft be ufed one falfe Fifth, as will be explained in its proper Place:
The abovefaid four Notes, from which arifes their Thirds naturally fharp, are diftinguiihed from the reft of the Notes of the Octave, and commonly called the four principal Notes. thereof; but in Reality only the firft Note and the fifth are the two principal and findamental Notes, becaufe the firft principal Grave Sound C, is the Productor of all the Sounds, in its Octave, and the fifth Sound G is the only Confonant to the principal C, and the fame G becomes the neceflary Guide of the Harmony in the Progreffion, fo, as by proceeding only by Skips of Fifths above or below, the Harmony paffes fucceffively, not only the Primary Sounds of the natural Scale, but alfo thefe divided by Semitones, as before faid, as will be demonftrated in its proper Place.

The faid fifth Sound of the Octave is called the fandamental Guide, becaufe after having introduced the Combinations of Sounds into the different Tones and Semitones of the Scale, it reftores the fame Sounds, and their Combinations, to the firft principal Note of the Scale. But in regard to the Interval of the fecond Fifth, between the other two Notes, F and C, the firft Note F indeed is confonant with the Octave C Acute, which is its Fifth, but it is not confonant with the Confonant Grave C, being only diftant-an Interval of a Fourth, which Experience fhews, that it is not confonant, but diffonant, and confequently only Harmonic, as explained before. The Ottave indeed is confidered in Harmony as the fame Soulnd of the principal; and this Reafon may affect both the-fourth and the fifth, becaufe they are neither of them confonant with both the Extremes of the Octave, but as the fifth C is confonant with C Grave the Principal, and the Octave C Acute is abforbed by the fame Grave Sound C, being evident (as has been demonftrated by Experience in the Introduction) that the Grave Sound abforbs all its Acute Confonant Sounds, confequently the Diftance, or Interval of one Fourth from G to C Acute, fubfifting, the Grave Sound C is not perceived, and for the fame Reafon the Confonant Fifth between $F$ and the Octave $C$ Acute, fubfifting, its principal $C$ Grave is not perceived, but only the Interval of one Fourth, which is not confonant: For this Reafon only the Fifth is the Confonant Sound with its Grave and Principal.

There two principal and fundamental Sounds, the Principal and its Fifth, muft be confidered as the original and firf Foundation of all the Combinations and Progreffions of the Sounds in their own Scale ; and may both be ufed in Melody and Harmony, without changing their Place, as it is ufed by the Bagpipe, which keeps continually playing the principal Note, as the Foundation of Melody; and the confonant Fifth; which is the fundamental Guide of the Sounds of its own Scale, may alfo continually Yerve for a fable Foundation under all Combinations and Progreflions which can be formed in its Scale; as is commonly ufed in Cadences, particularly in Church-Mufic, in the laft and final Cadence, when the Pedal of the Organ being ufed upon that Occafion, which
is played with the Foot in one of the loweft fundamental fifth Sounds of the Organ, it is always kept firm under the Harmonic Progreffion of the Subject Melody, or Fugue, propofed in the Beginning, and repeated, as Epilogue, before the final Cadence, with both the Hands employed in the Harmonic Combinations and Progreflions of the faid Subject, till at laft it refolves into the Cadence. Therefore the above two Sounds, Principle and Guide, are called the two original, and ftable, or immoveable fundamental Sounds, being diftinguifhed by this Name from the other two fundamental Baffes deriving from the Motion of the fifth high and low, which Baffes are called the fundamental Bafies of the Progreflion of Harmony.

The two firft immoveable, and the two laft moveable Bafies, are called fundamental. The two firft continually founding the fame Note, without any Regard to the Progreffion, and Combination of the fuperior Parts in the Courfe of the Octave: On the contrary, the other two follows the Harmony, conforming to the Rules of the fundamental Progrefiion; therefore thefe two laft Baffes are the principal Object of this prefent Syftem of Progreffion, or Modulation.

The two firft Intervals in the fuperior Divifion of Example II. Plate VI. the firf from the extreme Grave Sound C, to its fifth G, and middle Sound of the Syftem; and from F, alfo middle Sound to C extreme Acute, both being of a perfect Fifth afcending, we call them the indeterminate imperfect Skips confonant of the Guide, namely, from the Principal, or from a Guide to another Guide, it is called indeterminate, becaufe by thefe Skips the Harmony cannot be terminated, except in fome Inftances, for the Sake of Expreffion ; and it is alfo called imperfect, becaule from thefe Skips arife all the imperfect Irregulars, and fufpended Cadences, with other Imperfections, which will be demonftrated in the next Book. On the contrary, the other two Skips, as in the under Divifion of the fame Example II. Plate VI. from C above, to F below middle Sound, and from G alfo middle Sound, to C Grave below, both defcending with a perfect Fiith : Thefe, and all other of the fame Kind, we call them the terminate, perfect, confonant Skips of Cadences, that is from the Guide to the Principal, becaufe from thefe Sort of Skips arife all perfect, middle, and final Cadences, by which the Harmony is terminated, and it is called perfect, becaufe it may be joined with the following Thirds to the Fifth; namely, the Seven and Nine, as will be explained in the next Book: But it muft be diftinguifhed, that when the Combination of the laft Note is compounded, the Cadence is not terminated, becaufe thofe abovefaid fuperior Third, which muft be prepared in the antecedent Combination, wanted after to be refolved, and for that Reafon the laft Note of the perfect terminate Cadence, mult be of fimple Harmony, and not at all compounded by higher Thirds than the two which compofe the Fifth, as will be demonftrated in the next Book.

Firf N.B. The fundamental Bafs, proceeding by the imperfect confonant Skips of Guide, rifes continually, paffing through all the Sounds of the Octave; on the contrary, with the perfect confonant Skip of Cadence, it falls continually, paffing alfo all the Sounds of the Octave, as it is delineated in Example III. Plate VI.

Second N. B. It muft be remembered, that when the Bafs afcends a Fifth, it is the fame as defcending a Fourth; alfo defcending a Fifth, is the fame as afcending a Fourth, as before-mentioned ; the fame is afcending a Third as defcending a Sixth, and defcending a Third, as afcending a Sixth, as in Example IV. Plate VI.

## Of two Harmonic Movements added to the two Confonant.

Article II.

$\mathrm{T}^{0}$
O the above two confonant Movements, have been added two other Harmonic Movements, viz. of a Third low, and the other of a Third high : Thefe two Movements, or Skips, are not abfolutely fundamental, the firft of Third low deriving
from the perfect confonant Skip of Cadence, and the other of a Third high, from the imperfect Skip confonant of Guide, both ferving as Auxiliaries to the other two fundamental; therefore we call the firft defcending a Third, the perfect auxiliar Harmonic Skip of a Third low; and the other afcending a Third high, the imperfect auxiliar Harmonic Skip of a Third high ; they are both called Harmonic, being derived from the Motion of the Third, which is Harmonic, and not confonant, as will appear in the next Chapter : but the firt Skip of a Third low is diftinguifhed by the Term perfect, as deriving from the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence, partaking of its Perfection. The other, on the contrary, is called imperfect, deriving from the imperfect confonant Skip of Guide, and alfo partaking of its Imperfections, as will clearly be demonftrated in the next Book.

With the two confonant Skips, and their two Auxiliars, the fundamental Bàs is able to perform all poffible Harmonic Progreflion; therefore we call it the true fundamental Syftem of the faid Harmonic Progreflion.

## Of the Divifion of the fundamental Progreffion arifing from the above Syfcm.

## Article III.

THE different Scales which arife from the feven Primary Sounds, excluding the Octave, as a Repetition of the firft Sound, were diftinguifhed by fome Greeks, and by all the old Romans, as alfo by Guido and his Followers, in feven Species, which is the fame as to fay feven Octaves: The Difference of the feven Species was made by the different Situation of the Semitones, without any other Diftinction; and the paffing from one Species to another, was called Modulation, as the Greeks have called the paffing from a Mode to another. This Word Modulation has continued, and ftill is continued by Muficians; but in this Treatife it is called by the common Name Progreffion, which fignifies in Melody the moving from one Sound to another, and in Harmony, from many divers Sounds combined, to another different Combination, proceeding from one Place to another, in tranfpofing the Scales, which Term Progreflion may be eafily underftood by all Sorts of People; with this Progreffion is formed all Sorts of Mufic.

This Progreffion is made in two different Manners, therefore we fhall diftinguifh them in natural or fimple, and in mix'd or varied; the natural or fimple Progreffion, is only formed in the natural Scale, paffing through its relative, and fubordinate Scales, without changing the original Primary Sounds; and this Progreffion arifes from the abovementioned natural Syftem of Progreffion, as from the general Syftem of Progreffion arife the Progreffion which we call mix'd or varied, becaufe it tranfpofes the Scales in every one of the Semitones, which divides the Primary Sounds, and by this Tranfpofition is changed and altered the firft Order of the Sounds, as will be clearly explained in the Articles of the particular different Scales.

Firf N.B. The general Syftem of Progreffion before-mentioned, is formed by thirteen Scales, every one of which proceed by perfect Fifths defcending or afcending; and in this Manner all the faid Scales are divided into thirteen Sounds by twelve Intervals of an equal Semitone, by the Progreffion of a perfect Fifth, and all the Sounds of a different Denomination formed by the two Motions of the Fifth, are diftinguifhed as is clearly exprefled in Plate VII.

Second N. B. The other natural Syftern of Progreffion is formed by eight Scales, which ferves to every one of the primary and original Sounds, all proceeding alfo by Fifths afcending and defcending; but becaufe between the eight Primary Sounds, two of the fame are only in Diftance of a Semitone, when the others are of a full Tone, as has been feen in the general Syftem of Sounds; therefore, when the fundamental Bafs moves from the fecond Semitone B, cannot proceed with a perfect Fifth, which in afcending is F fharp, which Note or Sound is not in the natural Scale, confequently muft neceffarily
proceed with a falfe Fifth to F natural. The fame in defcending with the fame Motion of a perfect Fifth, the Bafs muft alfo neceffarily proceed with a falfe Fifth from the Note F to B natural.

Third N. B. The above faid falfe Fifth is fupported in defcending by the perfect Skip of Cadence, but not in afcending with the imperfect Skip confonant of Guide, for the Reafons which will be demonftrated in the next Book.

Fourth N. B. The above Divifion of the Progreffion explained in this prefent Article, is one of the principal and neceffary Notions for more eafy attaining the compleat Knowledge of the whole Art.

## CHAP. V.

# Of the Harmonic Divifion of the Syftem of Sounds, from whence arifes the Harmonic Syltem of Combination of Sounds, with its particular Divifions. 

## Articie I.


#### Abstract

${ }^{250 n} 5 \mathrm{HE}$ Terms of Confonant and Harmonic were always ufed as fynonymous. T The Thirds and Sixths, the Fifths and Octaves, have been, and at this very Diftinction of calling the Thirds and Sixths imperfect Confonant, not in regard to the Degree of Confonance, but becaufe they may be altered into Major and Minor ; and the Fifths and Octaves perfect confonant, becaufe they cannot be altered. It feems very clear, that the Term Confonant fignifies two Sounds, which refemble each other, and being founded together, can fcarcely be diftinguifhed, as it is demonftrated by Experience, in the Introduction: For which Reafon a Progreffion made with a Combination of two Octaves, or two Fifths following each other in a Compofition of two, or three Parts, are juftly forbidden in Practice, becaufe they are confidered as fimple Sounds, without Harmony.


Harmony muft be confidered as the Union or Combination of diffonant Sounds, which Word Diffonant fignifies, that there is heard two diftinct Sounds, as abovefaid, or, in vulgar Terms, a Combination of diffonant Sounds, diftinguifhable by the Ear, as has been defined in the fourth Article of the firft Chapter, for which Reafon the fimple Fifths and Octaves cannot be Harmonic, particularly the Octaves, which being the more perfect confonant, is always abforb'd and confounded with its Grave Sound; and, on the contrary, the other Intervals cannot be confonant, as mentioned in the antecedent Chapters; but the Fifth, when divided into two Parts by a middle Sound, it becomes Harmonic, being diftinguifhed in and by two fucceflive Thirds, confequently if all the Sounds which compofe their general Syftem, were difpofed in fucceffive Thirds, all the fame Sounds woild become confonant and Harmonic, refpectively from one Fifth to another; and in this Manner will be formed an Harmonic Syftem difpofed, as in Example VII. Plate IX.

But of all there Thirds, Experience Thews, that only the firf Third, which divides the fifth Sound from the Principal in two Thirds, is properly the original and effential Harmonic Sound; effential, becaufe it divides the perfect Fifth, which is confonant, in two Thirds, confequently the Fifth becomes alfo Harmonic, as mentioned before, and original, becaufe the firft Third is the Root of the following other Thirds, and becaufe an Air, Song, or Tune, may be compofed for two Voices, or Inftruments, with only

Thirds, or Sixths, as is known by Practice; to which two Parts may be added à proper-Bafs, which together, or without the Bafs, will make an agreeable Harmony, and give great Pleafure to the Ear; which is not poffible to be done with only the Combination of Fifths, and Octaves; and becaufe the fundamental Bafs is always joined with its confonant Fifth, which Fifth, when it is divided by the Third, making two Thirds, one Major, and one Minor, and being added to the Octave of the Principal, Fifth, and Third, in this Combination are compofed all the Primary Sounds Harmonic, with the two confonant; namely, the two Thirds Major and Minor, by which is formed the Fifth and the Fourth, from the Fifth to the O\&tave; alfo the two Sixths, Major and Minor, the Major between the fifth G, and the Octave of the firft third $E$; and the Minor between the fame third E, and the Octave of the principal C. This Combination, which is the Root of all Combinations compound, and full, make one fimple Accord, by which may be made a Counterpoint fundamental in fix real Parts, and in figurate Mufic in eight Parts, by only the Inverfion of this fimple fundamental Accord, which Compofition will be agreeable, without the Combination of any fuperior Thirds, as Seventh, Ninth, $\mathcal{E}^{\circ}$ c. by Muficians called Falfes, or Difcords. And fo far as regards the Combination of the above fuperior Thirds, Experience fhews, that they cannot be added abruptly, being not agreeable to the Ear, for being fo diftant from their principal and fundamental Ground; but when introduced by the fimple Accord fundamental, which is, as before told, their very Origin, or, in the Mufician's Term, well prepared, will much improve and augment the Pleafure thereof.

From the above Reafons it is manifeft, that the natural Harmonic Syftem of the Combination of Sounds, arifes only from the Harmonic Divifion of the general Syftem of the fame Sounds into fucceffive Thirds, which being compofed of the eight natural and original Primary Sounds, confequently produces eight Harmonic Scales difpofed, as in Plate 9 Example VII.

From the Order of the Divifion in the above Example, it is apparent, that this Syftem produces three Major Thirds, and four Minor, which are not only Harmonic one with another, but alfo confonant at the fame Time with their Fifth below, and above. The firft Third of the general Syftem of Sounds, is the Note E, which is Harmonic with C, the Principal, and with G, the fifth Sound of the general Syftem, and is confonant with B , the feventh Sound, B being its perfect Fifth.

The fecond Third G is confonant with its Principal, and with D its Fifth above, and Harmonic with E below, and B above.

B, the third Third, and the feventh Sound of the Octave, is Harmonic with G below, and D above, and is confonant with E , its Fifth below, but is not confonant with F above, it being a falfe Fifth, compofed of fix Semitones, therefore is diffonant and only Harmonic.

D, the fourth Third in the firft Harmonic Scale, is Harmonic with B and F, and confonant with $G$ below, and $A$ above.

F, the fifth Third, is confonant with C above, Octave of the Principal, but not with B, its Fifth below, which is falfe, as abovefaid, confequently it is only Harmonic; and it is alfo Harmonic with D and A , its Third below and above.

The laft third $A$ of the fame firft Harmonic Scale, is confonant with $D$ below, and $E$ above ; and Harmonic with $\mathbf{C}$ and F , its Thirds above and below.

As the fundamental Bafs in all its Progreffions, muft be joined with its two confonant Sounds, the Fifth, and Octave, to which it is neceffary to add the Third, without which
which the Accord; or Combination, is only confonant, and not Harmonic, as before explained; therefore all the Art of combining the Sounds, confifts in keeping firm, one, two and three Sounds, which compofes the original, fimple Combination, in the antecedent Combination fimple; or compound, that may be, which Sound, by the fucceeding Motion of the fundamental Bafs, are changed into the fuperior Thirds (called falfe by the Muficians) and afterwards in the fubfequent Motions of the fame Bafs, they muft be again introduced by a proper Refolution into one of the three Sounds of the fimple Accord, with the Third, Fifth, or Octave. This is all which may ferve for a general Solution of the Myftery of the Combination of Sounds, fo confounded, and intricate, as commonly it is fuppofed to be.

The Method and Order of all the poffible Combinations of Sounds, in every poffible Progreffion, will be demonftrated by the Canons of the Harmonic Code, in the next Book, and clearly explained with all their different Diftinctions and Exceptions.

## Of the Divifon of the Combination of Sounds. <br> Articie II.

THE Combination of Sounds is an Agreement of three, four, five, or more Sounds altogether, difpoied in the Order of the Harmonic Syftem, as third, fifth, feventh, ninth, E̛C.

It is divided into three different Kinds of Combination, which we call the firft fimple, the fecond compound, and the laft the full Combination: This Divifion is alfo neceffary for attaining the Knowledge of the Harmonic Art.

The fimple Combination is compofed of the firft and fecond Third, which makes the perfect Fifth to the fundamental Bafs, in whatfoever Scale, as in the Difpofition of the Harmonic Syftem, and with or without the Octaves, and the double Notes, it is called common Chord, or perfect Accord, by Muficians.

The compound Combination is made by adding one, or two; of the fuperior Thirds to the two firft; as the feventh and ninth, or the eleventh and thirteenth; which two laft are commonly marked fourth and fixth, for the Facility of ufing the fimple Figures, inftead of the double ones.

The full Combination is fo call'd, when to the above compound Combination are added. one or two Thirds more, fo as to be united to all the fuperior Thirds, which compofe the Harmónic Scale.

The refpective Thirds, which compofe the Compound, or full Combination, are marked with Figures under, or over, the Bafs Notes, as may be feen in fome Canons in the next Book, and in fome Examples in the laft Book. Thefe Figures denote the divers fuperior Thirds concerned in the Combination to the Bafs Note; for Example, the firft Third above the Fifth, being the feventh Sound, is marked with a 7, the following third Note with a 9 ; but the other fuperior Thirds to the ninth, which are the eleventh and thirteenth, are marked thus, 4 th and 6th, for the Facility of the fimple Figures, as mentioned before.

The fimple Combination has no Occafion for Figures, having no fuperior Third to the firft two, which compofe the Fifth.

Thefe fuperior Thirds which compofe the Compound, and full Harmony, cannot fubfift in the Beginning, or in the firft Combination of the Compofition, which muft be
fimple, with only the Third, Fifth, and Octave, this Combination being the Productor of the following compound Accord, as before told; and the fame fimple Combination muft be adapted in the fame Beginning to the principal Note of the Scale, in which the Compofition of the Mufic is compofed, except by fome Accident, for the Sake of fome particular Expreffion, by which the Compofer may be obliged to begin the Compofition with the compound Combination of the fundamental Guide of the chofen Scale, and ordinarily and particularly in the Compofition of Recitatives and Airs of a pathetic Nature, and grave Time ; in which Sort of Combination, the principal Note of the Bafs is almoft always omitted, and its compound Accord is fuppofed prepared by the fuppofed antecedent Accord, notwithftanding it is not expreffed; but this happens very feldom, and almoft never in gay Movements. Neither can the fame fuperior Thirds fubfift in the final, perfect Cadences, where, in two or three Parts, the fame final Cadence muft be only in Confonance, namely, with only the Octaves, and in four Parts may be joined the fifth; in five or more Parts the faid Cadences may be Harmonic, namely, with the Addition of the third, becaufe in five Parts the fundamental Sound, and its Fifth, becomes doubled by their Octaves ; fo the third Sound, which is the firft Harmonic,' and confequently the more fenfible, being not doubled, cannot opprime the confonant Sounds, when they are doubled.

This muft be obferved, that when the Scale is with the Major Third, this fame harp Third muft not be in the extreme Part acute of the Combination, but in the Middle, or near the Middle, all fharp diffonants being the moft fenfible. For the above Reafons, the fimple Combination may be called the terminate Accord, and the compound, or full Combination, which properly belongs to the fifth Note of every Scale, being its fundamental Guide, muft be called the indeterminate Accord, or Combination, becaufe the compound, or full Combination, neceffarily requires a fubfequent Combination for its Refolution into the perfect fimple Combination, in which only the Harmony may be terminated.

## CHAP. VI.

# Of the different, Scales, their different Ufe, and their Diftinction. 

## Articee I.


#### Abstract

TitHERE are many Scales arifing from the general Syftem of Sounds, belonging to Harmony, and alfo to Melody; but only one is the Principal, which is the true Copy of the very fame general Syftem, and it is the Spring of all other Scales, Divifions, and other Syftems ; therefore it is called the Principal Scale, and it is alfo called the Natural Scale, as being derived properly from Nature, being analogous to the human Voice, and to Senfation, which Voice cannot naturally and eafily afcend, or defcend all the Degree of the Scale, without mixing the Tones with Semitones; and if any Perfon will try to afcend or defcend by fucceffive equal full Tones, he will find it very difficult; and our Senfations take no Notice of any Sound of a leffer Interval than of a Semitone; confequently this principal Scale is in its proper and moft natural Order, rifing from the loweft to the highert Sound, and defcending without any accidental either flat, or fharp; its Sound, and their Names, being unalterable.


To the above principal, and natural Scale, another Scale different may be joined alfo as Principal; and is called the Scale of the minor Mode, or of the flat Third by Muficians: This Scale has hitherto been known but imperfectly, the Order of their Sounds being confidered not different from the Order of ours fubordinate, and relative Scales to the Principal, and it is not a long Time it has been accommodated as a principal one, by the Practice of the Muficians; for this Reafon, and to diftinguifh it more properly from the
other principal natural Scale, it is called in this Treatife the Artificial Scale: The Difference of the le two principal Scales will be explained in their reflective Articles.

Befides the above two principal Scales, there are two more, which may be confidered as principal ; there two Scales arife from the confonant Divifion of the general System of Sounds explained in the antecedent fourth Chapter; namely one from the Progreffion of the confonant fifth ascending, as F to $\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{G}$ to $\mathrm{D}, \mathcal{E}^{\circ} \mathrm{c}$. and the other from the confonant fifth defending, as from G to $\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{C}$ to $\mathrm{F} ; \mathrm{F}$ to B flat, $\mathcal{E} c$. from whence arifes the Divifion of the natural Scale in thirteen Sounds, divided by twelve Intervals, each of one Semitone, but in two different Manners, by which are formed the two Scales, one afcending and the other defending; but the Diverfity of there two Scales relates only to the Denomination of the Sounds themfelves, which are the fame under different Names; confequently the two Scales may be confidered as only one, called by Muficians the Scale of Semitones; the Ufe of which is for tranfpofing the natural and artificial Scales higher or lower, as will be explained in their different Articles.

From the other two Scales, the natural and the artificial, arifes their proper relative and fubordinate Scales, and from the other two of Tranfpofition, their different tranfpofed Scales, which Scales will be explained all fucceffively.

Befides the above Scales, there are many others, which ferve only for the Melody of the Parts, as is Shewn in the laft Article but one, belonging to this Chapter, and delineated in Example XVII. Plate XVI.

## Of the Principal Natural Scale.

## Article II.

THIS Scale, which, as has been faid, is the very Copy of the General System of Sounds, and the Mother Scale, is compofed of a Major Second from C to D; of a Major Third from $C$ to $E$; of a perfect Fourth from $C$ to $F$; of a perfect Fifth from $C$ to G ; of a Major Sixth to A ; a Major Seventh to B; and from the fame C to C Acute, an Octave, as has been explained in the General Syftem of Sounds. But as the fundamental Bass, with its different Movements, may pass through all the eight. Sounds of the Scale; therefore every Sound muff have its proper Scale difpofed into an Octave, to diftribute to the different Motions of the fame fundamental Bass, its proper and refpectively different Combinations.

There Scales are formed with the fame Sounds of their principal Scale, natural or tranfpofed, as may be ; and as the principal natural Scale is formed by eight Sounds, therefore there aries eight Scales, fever of which are the relative Scales, and fubordinate to the firft principal Scale, as in Example VIII. Plate X. namely, the Scales of D, E F, G, A, B, and C Acute; this last having its Sounds, in the fame Order as the Principal, is confidered as a Repetition of its firft Principal ; but, on Come Occafions, mut be alfo confidered as relative, as will be explained-in its proper Place; the other fix are the proper Relatives, having their Sounds difpofed in different Order of the firf Principal, as it is in the above-mentioned Example VIII. Plate X.

Of the Relative Scales arijng from the Natural Scale, and of their respective Order to the famine.

Article III.

THE frt Scale in the above Example VIII. Plate X. is the principal Scale natural, which has its Sounds difpofed, as has been explained in the antecedent Articles.

The following fecond Scale is the Scale of D , which is the firft Relative, and has the Fourth and Fitth both perfect, but differs from the Principal in the firft Third, and Seventh, both Minor.

The third Scale E, has alfo the Fourth and Fifth perfect, but the firf Second is Minor; and confequently its firft Third Minor, as alfo the Sixth and Seventh both Minor.

The fourth Scale F, is only different from the Principal in the fourth Note B, which is a falfe Fourth.

The fifth Scale G, is the fame as the Principal, except the feventh, which is Minor.
The fixth Scale A, has the Fourth and Fifth perfect, but the Third, Sixth, and Seventh, are Minor.

The feventh, which is the Scale of B, has its Fifth falfe, and differs from the Principal in its Second, Third, Sixth, and Seventh, being all Minor.

The eighth Scale is the fame as its Principal, being its Acute Eccho, but may be confidered as relative on fome Occafions, as below will be explained.

The above fix Scales, D, E, F, G, A, B, not only differ from the Principal, but alfo from each other.

The two Scales of E and B are the moft imperfect, E being deprived of its proper Guide, which thould have been B, if it might have its Fifth perfect, which is falre, as mentioned; and B cannot be properly a relative principal Sound, for the fame Reafon of being deprived of its own perfect Fifth : Therefore thefe two Scales cannot fubfift in natural Progrefion, but with fome Limitations, as will appear in the next Book.

Firf N.B. It was mentioned, that the two extreme Sounds of the Confonant Divifion of the general natural Syftem of Sounds, C, C, and the two middle, F, G, are commonly confidered as the four principal Sounds of the Octave, following the firt Opinion of Pytbagoras, which after accidentally hearing the Harmonic Noife of the above four Sounds expreffed by four Hammers, as is afferted by the common vulgar Hiftory; and after weighing the four Hammers, and making many Experiments with hanged and ftretched Strings, he fixed the Ratios of the Intervals, which he fuppofed to be betwixt the Sounds of the above Quadruple, for exemplifying to the human Underftanding the Difference between the Gravity and Acutenefs of the Mufical Sounds.

But of the above four Sounds are only two which properly may be confidered as principal, in Point of Progreffion (as mentioned in Chap. IV. Article I.) C Acute, is only the Repetition of the principal Grave C, and the fourth Sound F has its fourth Sound imperfect, and falfe in $B$, therefore the Harmony cannot proceed in the natural Scale with the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence, from the fame F to B, without Preparation, but only from $F$ to $C$ Acute, with the Confonant imperfect Skip of Guide, being the Acute C, its perfect Fifth. But G, the fifth Sound of the Scale, being the perfect Fifth of the principal C Grave, the Octave of which makes its perfect Fourth above, and the fame $G$ falling directly into the principal C, with the Confonant perfect Skip of Cadence, muft be confidered as the only fundamental Guide of the Scale, having, in its fundamental Combination, the two Harmonic indictive Notes, the Major Third, and the Minor Seventh (as before told) the other Confonant perfect. Skips, which happen in the Progrefion of the Harmony in the fame natural Scale, as D A, or E B, and A E, can only ferve as relative or fubordinate Guides.

C, the Octave of the Principal, (as before mentioned) may become, in the Progreffion
of Harmony; the Guide to $F$, into which it falls directly, as G to C principal, but becaufe F cannot be a principal Sound of the Scale, having the falie fourth B, and C Acute, as Guide, is deprived of its indicative Minor Seventh ; confequently ferves only for a relative Guide to F , and F only is fubprincipal relative in the natural, or fimple Progreffion.

By confidering the two indicative Notes, all the Sounds' are eafily diftinguifhed from their principal Sound of the Scale, and from their fundamental Guide.

G, the fundamental Guide, is not different in its Scale from the principal $C$, only in the feventh Note, which is Minor, deriving from the perfect Fourth of the Scale; and this feventh Note muft be Minor, which is a neceffary Condition appertaining to all fundamental Guides, and may alfo be called the fundamental Seventh, to diftinguifh them from the Sevenths of the relative Guides.

The third of every fundamental Guide, which is B in the natural Scale, and naturally fharp, which mult be always fharp in all the fundamental Guides of the different principal Scales, may alfo be called fundamental Thirds.

The above two Notes, the Third Major, and Minor Seventh, of the fundamental Guides, being the Notes which indicate the approaching of the principal Note of the Scale, may alfo be called the Harmonic, fundamental, indicative Notes; namely, Major Third Indicative afcending, and the Minor Seventh defcending Indicative. The Indicative afcending ferves to both the natural and artificial Scales, and their tranfpofed Scales; and the Indicative erves only to the natural Scale, and its tranfpofed Scales, for to diftinguifh them from the artificial, and its tranfpofed Scales (as more clearly will be explained in the following Article of the Scale artificial.)

The Major Third afcending, goes direfly to the principal Sound of the Scale, and the Indicative Seventh Minor defcends directly to the Major Third of the Principal, each of them proceeding by Semitones, which is the fhortef Way, and confequently the moft natural, both Notes leading into the firf fimple Combination of the principal Note of the Scale, with a contrary Motion.

The falfe Fifth between the Major Third, and Minor Seventh, may alfo be called the Harmonic Indicative Minor Fifth; and the two. Notes being inverted, becomes the Indicative Harmonic Major Fourth.

Second N.B. It was mentioned at the Beginning of the firf Article of this Chapter, that the natural Scale is the Spring, or the very Mother of all Sorts of Syftems, or Scales, that may be formed with the Mufical Sounds; and we have feen firt arifing the Scales relative, and the artificial Scale ; alfo the Scales of Tranfpofition. Now we fhall fee that the Syftem of Combination of Sounds arifes alfo from the fame Mother Scale.

The natural Scale, which makes with its Scales relative a perfect Quadrate, as appears in Example VIII. Plate X. forms the Harmonic Scale with the Diagonal, which defcends from the firft Scund $C$, to the laft $C$ in the oppofite Angle; from the firt $C$ it paffes to the firt harmonic third $E$, from the third to the fecond $G$, which is the fifth of the firft principal, from $G$ it paffes to $B$, the third Third of the Harmonic Scale, and feventh of the firf Principal; from B it paffes to D, which is the fourth Third of the fame Harmonic Scale, and the ninth of the natural ; from the ninth it paffes to the eleventh Note of the natural Scale, and the fifth Third of the Harmonic, from the eleventh to the thirteenth, and from that to the fifteenth, the laft, which are the fixth and feventh Thirds, which forms the Harmonic Scale, and all Laterals of the above firft Diagonal are difpofed by Thirds, and the oppofite Diagonal, with its Laterals, gives all the Octave, which is the general Magazine, not only of the Mufical Sounds; but alfo of all poffible others.

Third N.B. From the above fyftem of combination of founds, which alfo makes a perfect quadrate with the fcales of every one of thefe founds, is manifefted the natural fyftem of progreffion, alfo by its firt diagonal defcending to the oppofite angle, proceeding always by fifths, as is to be feen in example VII. plate IX. the oppofite diagonal, and its laterals, gives alfo the octave, and from the diagonal and its laterals, the fyftem of the natural progreffion, it is reftored to the natural fcale, the oppofite diagonal gives the fame octave, as is to be feen in example VI. plate VIII. all that confirms the new two fyftems of the combination of founds, and of their progreffion.

## Of the Artificial Scale, commonly called the Scale of the Minor Mode, or the Flat Third.

## Article IV.

WE have feen in the Introduction, that the old Greeks have begun their firt fcale with only four founds, difpofed in four ftrings of their lyre, by the intervals of femitone, tone and tone; afterwards, for the benefit of their voice, were augmented with three other founds, by three other frings added to the lyre, in all feven frings, with which was formed their diatonic fyftem, or fcale, and the two tetrachords conjoined, which tetrachords being not fufficient for the different voices high and low, were augmented to five tetrachords difpofed in fixteen frrings, which together was called the greatef, and unchangeable fyltem. Arifoxenes diftinguifhed his fifteen modes by tetrachords (which properly are diateffaron) each diftant a femitone, one from another) dividing the octave in twelve femitones. Guido Aretino, not finding the tetrachords of the Greek proper for the harmony, he added to each tetrachord two founds in the grave, by which he formed his hexachords, as are all diftinctly explained in the above Introduction. From all which
it feems very clearly, that the Greeks, old Romanss, and Guido, with all his followers, have not known other fcales than thofe producted by their tetrachords and hexachords, without any diftinction : Moreover, the firft diatonic fcale, with the addition of the chord proflambanomenos, was divided in feven fpecies, as before-mentioned, in four fpecies the fifths, and in three fpecies the perfect fourth, with confidering only their diftinction and difference by the different fituation of their femitone, confequently without the notion of the principal fcale, nor in the major mode, nor in the minor mode; and being tranfpofed, the octaves, and their fpecies, were always confidered in the fame order of their tetrachords and hexachords. The different modes and melody of the Greeks and Romans never forted from the tetrachords, but.only paffing from one to another; and the harmony of Guido never paffed his hexachords, only paffing from one to another, all without changing the chords of the greateft and unchangeable fyttem, excepting in the occafion of the three genders and their colours, for which the Greeks were obliged to change the order of their tetrachords with two moble, and two ftable ftrings, as explained in the Introduction.

But by the gradual progrefs of the harmony, it now is perfectly clear, that one natural fcale muft fubfift, and it is the principal; and alfo another fcale different in the order of their founds from the firft principal, which fecond fcale muft be contidered as a principalone, which is here named the artificial fcale, being perfectly accommodated, and fucceffively accomplifhed by the art, in imitation of the firf principal natural, in regard to the manner of afcending the octave, but different in its third found. This artificial fcale may be applied to every found of the natural fcale; but in this treatife it is applied to the fcale of C , with minor third, becaufe the firt principal fcale being in C with major third, may more eafily be known the difference between each other.

The effential difference between the natural and this artificial fcale, are as follows. The firf third in the natural fcale is major, or naturally fharp, but in this artificial fcale, is minor, or flat. The fecond found, or note ${ }_{2}$ of both fcales, is diftant a major fecond, or full tone, which
which is a neceflary condition in all the principal fcales, as it is the perfect fourth and fifth; and as the natural fcale has its fourth note, with its third major, being the fame fourth, the fubprincipal relative note of the fame natural fcale, as before-mentioned, this artificial fcale has alfo the third of the fourth note flat, the like hath its principal note: Bint becaufe all fundamental guides muft have their thirds harp, as their indicative notes, for to pafs to the principal note, which fharp thirds are the feventh major, or Charp, in the order of their principal fcales; and as it is not poffible to pafs gradually from the minor, or flat fixth, to the major feventh, being diftant three femitones, which properly is an interval of a minor third, confequently art has been obliged to change the minor fixth into the major fixth, in order to help the melody, in afcending gradually to the major feventh, which major feventh becomes the neceffary indicative fharp third of the fundamental guide, in order alfo to afcend gradually to the octave of the principal note. On the contrary, in defcending from the fame Octave to the principal note, or only to the fourth note of the fcale, which (as has been faid) muft have its third flat, like its principal, the above major third of the fundamental guide muft be changed into a flat feventh of the fcale, in order to defcend gradually to the fixth note, which alfo muft be changed into a flat, to become a flat third to the above fourth note of the fcale, which being the fubprincipal relative, muft have its third flat; as above-mentioned. This occafions two different fcales, one for afcending; and the other for defcending, which two fcales happens only in the fcale of the principal, and of the guide, the other relative fcales are not changed, as may be feen in example IX. Plate 'XI. and the above two different fcales of the principal, and its guide, ferve only for the melody of the parts, and of the bals, when it is not fundamental, as often happens in figurate and comon mufic: For example, the common bafs defcending gradually from the octave to the guide, it may pafs either by the feventh and fixth major; or minor at pleafure; but when the fame common Bafs makes the accent in the fixth note defcending (as above-faid) from the octave, in this cafe both the fixth and feventh muft be minor ; but this minor fixth may afterwards be changed at pleafure, when the accented note is not fhort, in major fixth, before defcending to the fundamental guide, which guide muft have its major indicative third, as mentioned before. Thefe different accords, or combinations, will be demonftrated in the laft Book, which treats of figurate mufic; the fundamental bafs being not concerned in the combination, arifing from the gradual movement of the common bafs, which combinations are almoft all inverted from the fundamental combinations.
$N . B$. It has been mentioned, that the major third and the minor feventh, in the combination of the fundamental, guide of the natural fcales, and its tranfpofed fcales, may be called fundamental, and harmonic indicative third, and feventh, to diftinguifh them from the thirds and fevenths of the relative Guides, and becaufe they indicate the approach of their principal fcale by afcending the third to the fame principal, and the feventh defcending to the major natural third of their principal fcale the natural, and tranfpofed fcales; both proceeding by femitones by contrary motion. But in the artificial fcale, and its tranfpofed fcales, where the firft third is flat, confequently the fourth Note of the fame fcales, which become fevenths in the combination of their guides, refolving after into the flat third by defcending a full tone, inftead of a femitone, as in the natural fcale; for this reafon the third of this artificial fcale, being minor, cannot clearly be indicated by the fame feventh minor by defcending a full tone; becaufe, for example, fuppofing the above artificial fcale being $C$, with flat third, its guide $G$, with its feventh minor $F$, defcending to $E$ flat, the fame is done in the fcale of $E$ flat by the fame note $F$, as fifth of its guide, $B$ flat defcending allo to the fame $E$ flat, and notwithifanding that $F$ defcends into the principal note, as fifth of its guide; and in the fcale of $C$ the fame $F$ defcends as feventh of the Note $G$ guide into the third flat of the fcale, is not clearly perceived as indicative feventh: Therefore inftead of the fame feventh, the ninth minor to the guide, which is a minor third above the minor feventh, and a minor fecond above the octave, or double octave of the principal note, becomes by way of fupplement the harmonic fundamental, and indicative note, falling
by a femitone into the perfect fifth of the fcale; and the fame ninth being flat, which in the natural fcale is major, determines the artificial fcale of minor third by defcending in contrary motion of the indicative third, which afcends to the principal note of the fcale, in the fame time that the ninth defcends to the fifth, as abovefaid.

## Of the relative Scales to their principal artificial Scale.

## Article V.

A$\mathrm{L} L$ the relative fcales to this artificial fcale are different from their principal fcale, and alfo from each other, as may be feen in Ex. IX. Plate XI.

In the antecedent Ex. VIII. Plate X. of the natural fcale with its relatives, the third fcale, which begins in E, and the feventh fcale B, are the moft imperfect, as has been mentioned: But in the artificial fcale the moft imperfect in their relatives are the fcales of $D$ and $A$. The fcale of $D$, which is the fecond fcale in the above example, and the firt of the relatives, has the falfe fifth A flat, and the fixth fcale of A flat, which is the fifth of the relatives, has the falfe fourth D , and this is an effential difference between the two principal fcales, the natural and the artificial ; the natural fcale having the falfe fourth between the fourth note and the feventh; and the falfe fifth, between the fame feventh note and the octave of the fame fourth note; and the artificial fcale has the falfe fifth between the fecond found, or note of its fcale, and its fixth found, and the octave of the fecond note; but in the artificial fcale may be changed the falfe fifth, and falfe fourth into perfect on fome particular occafions, as will appear in the canons of the harmonic code in the next book; and for the fame reafons before given, the two fcales relative D and A flat of the artificial fcale, as the other two, F and B , in the natural fcale, cannot be freely ufed in harmony, but with fome limitations and exceptions, as will appear in the fame canons of the harmonic code.

The two principal notes, the principal and its principal guide, have both two fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, as above-mentioned; the difference between the other relatives is clearly apparent in the above Ex. IX. Plate XI. and the fame explanation done for the relatives of the natural fcale, may be applied to thefe of the artificial fcale, in the fame Ex. IX. Plate XI.

## Of the tranfofing Scales.

## Article VI.

TW O are the fcales of tranfpofition, both arifing from the two fundamental confonant movements of the perfect fifth afcending, and defcending, which movements gives thirteen founds, divided by twelve intervals of a femitone each ; and notwithftanding that from the two above motions of afcending and defcending, there arifes two fcales, thefe two fcales are compofed of the fame founds, but of a different denomination, as may be feen in Ex. X. Plate XII. in the firft line of this example is defcribed the afcending progreffion, and the defcending in the fecond line: The afcending progreffion begins with the note F afcending to C , and the defcending progreffion begins with the note B ; which two notes, F and B , being the two indicative notes of the natural fcale, one defcending and the other afcending, in contrary motion, gives firft the feven primary founds, before they pafs to thofe, which divides fucceffively all the tones of the octave in two femitones. By the firft fcale afcending are produced the notes of the fharp denomination, and by the other defcending, thofe of the flat denomination, as it is explained in the fame above example. Thefe different notes marked harp and flat, before mentioned, are the fame founds, but only different in their denomination, and in their natural place in the fcale,: For example, in the afcending fcale the note D fharp paffes to A fharp its perfect fifth;
this A fharp muft be noted in the fame place, where is noted A natural, only with the addition of the fharp fign: In the other defcending fcale the note F naturally defcends to B flat, being its perfect fifth; this B flat muft be noted in the place of B natural, with the addition of the flat fign $b$, but thefe different places and names change not the found; the reafon of it is evident; for D fharp to A fharp is an interval of five founds, with their proper names and places; fo from F defcending to its fifth B flat, this B flat cannot be named A fharp, nor A tharp B flat, being both fix names to fix confecutive notes in the place of their proper fcales; from this Reafon it is apparent, that the figns. of fharpand flat $b$, are only neceflary to put the founds with their proper names in their proper place of their different fcales. The fign of tharp augments the found of an equal femitone; fo A fharp being augmented of one femitone, is the fame found as B flat, diminifhed a femitone from B natural, but named and put in the place proper to their particular fcales: The fame happens in all other fharps and flats. All this will appear very clear in the explanation of fome equivocal accord, which will be done in the laft book; where will be demonftrated, that with only a fimple compound accord, the harmony may pafs into divers oppofite fcales fharp and flat; and that will be the laft evidence of the unfubfiftance of the divifion of tones, and femitones into major and minor. From the above two fcales afcending and defcending, arife two other fcales proceeding gradually by femitones, as are difpofed in Example XiI. Plate XII. There two feales are properly the feale of tranfpofition, into every degree of which two fcales, both the natural and artificial fcales, may be tranfipofed.

The founds of theie two fcales of tranfpofition are alfo the fame, iut of different denomination, as thofe of the other two principal fcales arifing from the motion of the fifth, beiois explained ; confequently both thefe two fcales may be confidered as one, notwithftanding the divers poiftions, and names, as is commonly done by the muficians.
N. B. The figns of fharp and flat $b$, when they are put in the beginning of the compofition immediately after the fign of the key, and before the fign of time, which tules the meafue, fignifies that the fcale is not natural, but artificial, or tranfpofed from the natural, becaufe the natural has its found without any of the above figns; and when the fame figns are accidentally put betwixt the compofition, the fharp indicates that the note is tranfpofed a femitone higher, and the flat a femitone lower, confequently the fale becomes changed by the fame figns, namely, more acute by the fharp, and more lower by the flat:

## Of the Scales tranfpofed from the Natural Scale.

Article VII.

AS the principal natural fcale may be tranfpofed into every one of the thirteen founds of the fcales of tranfpofition, confequently every tranfipofed fcale muft have their founds tranfpofed into the fame order of their original mother fcale; and being thirteen founds, from which muft be abfrracted the extreme acute, being confidered as a repetition of the fame natural fcale, but higher, remains twelve founds, which muft have their proper fcale, to which is added five more of a different denomination; the twelve fcales arifing from the afcending fcale of tranfpoiftion, and the five of different denomination from the other defcending fcale, as are all defcribed in Example XIV. Plate XIII.
The firft fcale is the firft original fcale, the fecond is the fame original fcale tranfpofed a femitone higher, the third is tranfpofed a tone higher, the fourth three femitones higher; and fo of the reft, proceeding higher by femitones. All thefe fcales may be ufed, but fome of different denominations are more eligible than others : For example, in the ninth fcale of the above Example XIV. Plate XIII. which reprefents the fcale of G tharp, in order to afcend the octave, munt be ufed the note F, double fharp, which is marked thus (X) commonly, but improperly called diefis enarmonic, and in Englijs extreme fharp, which is the propereft term : But in afcending to the fame oclave $G$ fharp by the
other fcale under the denomination of A flat, which reprefents the found as G fharp, confequently of the fame fcale, there is not occafion of any double, or extreme fharp, as is apparent from the oppofite fcale to the above ninth fcale, which is the fourth fcale in thofe of different denominations in the fame above example, for which reafon the fourth fcale of D fharp, is abfolutely improper to be chofen, having two notes double fharp $\mathrm{F} x$, and $G x$, confequently the fcale of $E$ flat, which contains the fame founds, as the fcale of D fharp, is the proper fcale to be ufed. The feventh fcale of F fharp is generally better than the fcale of $G$ flat. The eleventh fcale in A fharp is evidently impracticable, having three notes extreme fharp, but in changing the denomination to $B$ flat, which is compofed of the fame founds of A charp, becomes very eafy and natural. Thefe extravagant ficales may happen by accident, in the middle of the compofitions, but they never muft be chofen for principal fcales. This is what is to be obferved in general, in regard to the tranfipofition of the fcales.

## Of the Tranfpofition of the Artificial Scale.

## Article" VIII.

THE artificial fcale, as before faid, has two different fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, every one furming thirteen fcales tranfpofed from the principal, from which may be deducted the laft fcale, being compofed of the fame founds, but one octave higher, therefore muft be confidered only twelve, with five more of different denominations, but being two fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, as beforementioned, the fame twelve fcales, and the five of different denomination, are augmented to twenty-four, and ten more of a different denomination, which are divided in two examples, as may be feen in Example XV. and XVI. Plate XIV. and XV. the firft of which belongs to the afcending fcale, and the other to the fcale defcending, every one of them having joined their fcales of different denomination.

The fame explication, which was made ufe of in the tranfpofed fcales from the natural, will be fufficient for thefe two examples of the tranfpofition of the artificial fcale, the principal difference being in having its firft third flat, and the fecond third, which forms the perfect fifth, confequently fharp, contrary to the natural fcale, which hath the firft third fharp, and the fecond flat, as has been explained; only it muft be remembered to chufe always that fcale which is the eafieft, avoiding the double fharps, or double flats, notwithfta nding the variety which adorns this art, it muft be attended with the greateft facility.

## Of the Number of the different Scales arifing from the two Scales of Tranfpofition.

## Article IX.

FROM the two principal fcales of tranfpofition in Example XIV. Plate XIII. and Examples XV. and XVI. Plates XIV. and XV. arifes twelve principal fcales, all tranfpofed from the natural fcale, with five more of a different denomination, as has been explained in the feventh article ; and becaufe the artificial is diftinguifhed by two fcales, one afcending, the other defcending, this occafions twenty-four tranfpofed fcales, twelve from defcending, and twelve from afcending, with ten more of different denomination, which together amounts to thirty-four fcales, which being joined with the twelve fcales, and more of different denomination, derived from the natural fcale, as above explained, makes in the whole fifty-one fcales, all principal ; and every one of thofe principal fcales having their proper feven relative fcales, which joined all together are three hundred and fifty-feven relatives, which joined with their principal, amounts in the whole to four hundred and eightereales, almoft all of them being ufeful to the harmonic art, in the way of variety.
$N . \dot{B}$. The muficians have commonly given, and ftill give indifferently, the names of key, tone, or mode, to the feales of founds; but thefe equivocal terms in this treatife have been diftinguifhed.

The name of key fignifies properly the fign of mark, which is put before the fales belonging to the melody of the different parts, as the key of C , or F , or G , belonging to middle, low, or high parts, as fopranos, contraltos, tenors, and baffes.

The term tone has properly been applied to the intervals exifting betwixt two founds, which gradually follow one another in the fcale, as between $\mathrm{C}, \mathrm{D}$, or $\mathrm{D}, \mathrm{E}, \mathcal{E}^{2} c$. and is called femisone, when the diftance or interval is not a full tone, as $\mathrm{E}, \mathrm{F}$, or $\mathrm{B}, \mathrm{C}$.

And the name mode, which is the lefs equivocal, fignifies properly a. certain particular manner of finging, as mode or manner, French, Scotch, Polones, or Sicilian, juft as the Greeks did in their modes Ionic, Doric, \&c.

For the above reafons thefe equivocal terms have been diftinguifhed throughout the whole of this treatife; and inftead thereof we have ufed only the proper term of fcale, which properly fignifies a feries of founds in an order gradually difpofed from grave to acute, or vice verfa; and without any further explanation, it may be underfood by all who will, or can underftand it, and the other terms applied feparately, as above explained, namely, the word key, to the different fcales of melody, the other word tone to the intervals, and mode, as manner.

## Of the different Scales of Melody and tbeir different Keys.

## Article X.

THE fcales which belong to the melody of every part, are made ufe of in order to fuit the different acutenefs, and gravity of the different voices or inftruments.

Thefe fcales are in number eight, every one having its proper different key, which fhews the order and place of the founds in every fale; and thefe keys are defcribed in Fig. VI. Example X. Plate V. and explained in the Introduction of this Treatife, where alfo has been mentioned, that now they are reduced to the number of five, but are all ufed in great church mufic in eight and fixteen parts, as diftinctly explained in the fame Introduction: Therefore we have now defcribed in the Example XVII. Plate XVI. all the eight fcales, with their limited founds defcending and afcending.

Every fcale has its proper key, to which fucceffively follows that fcale afcending and defcending, which is proper to every one of the different voices. The notes of thefe fcales have their proper limits, which muft not be paffed in afcending or defcending in compofitions, where all the different voices are joined, as in full choruffes, and in three or four voices, or more: But in compofitions for fome particular voices, the limits of thefe fcales may be exceeded according to the compafs of the voices. The inftruments, as violin, oboe, and violoncello, are not obliged to the above limits, which may be paffed according to their particular practice and ufe.

## Of the divers Pofitions of the Unifon refpectively to the different Keys.

## Article XI.

A LL the notes in Example XVIII. Plate XVI. which are under the different keys of F, C, G, in their different places, are all unifons, being all the fame note C, from their place or different pofition to the correfpondent unifon C , in all the other fcales, is
known the diftance of every found in their refpective fcales, and that ferves to keep every part in its. proper compafs, and alfo the eafier and more immediately to know the diftance from one key and fcale to another, and confequently for applying the proper notes which belong to every particular voice, every one of which cannot exceed their nearer parts in the acute or grave, but they muft be always below the nearer acute, and higher than the grave part.

Now fince we have known what is mufic in general, its founds, its different fyftems, and their divifion and fcales; we fhall pafs on to digeft and explain the fundamental harmony, its laws and rules, contained in the next books.

> END of the FIRST Book.



## D E L L'

# ARTE ARMONICA: <br> O R, 

## A Treatise of the Composition of MUSIC.

## B O OK II.

Containing the Fundamental Harmony, explained by the Fundamental Counterpoint; by which are formed all the Canons, orderly joined in one Harmonic Code, containing and explaining all the Laws and Rules of all poffible Combinations of Sounds, and their Progreffions; and firft the following Defcription of the faid Fundamental Counterpoint, and of its Compofitions, which make the Code Harmonic.

## Of the Fundamental Counterpoint.

 N the fifth article of the firf chapter of the antecedent book, the harmony was divided into fundamental and figurate: The fundamental becomes now the fubject of this book. It is called fundamental, becaufe properly it is the bafis or foundation of harmony, and is the only practical theory of the art; which is explained by a courfe or feries of harmonical compofitions, compofed by a fundamental counterpoint, as we call it, as has been mentioned in the above-faid article, Chapter I. Book I.

This fundamental counterpoint was never hitherto known, and confequently never ufed, being very different from the counterpoint commonly ufed in church mufic, and in teaching the compofition of mufic. In the counterpoint formerly, and now in the vogue, the balis and the parts move either gradually or fkipping at pleafure : For this reafon the compofition of mufic cannot be learned otherwife than imperfectly, and by a long practice, without knowing the derivation of the particular rules belonging to the divers combinations of founds
and their progreffions. But in the counterpoint here introduced, the motions of the bafs; and alfo of the parts, are limited; the bafs moving only by its competent fkips, and the other parts moving gradually, without fkipping; in this manner the different motions of the bafs are all diftinguifhed, alfo the different combination of the founds formed by the parts to every different and particular motion of the bals, which in fimple progreffion paffes through all the eight original founds of the natural fcale, and in mixed or varied progreffions thro' all the femitones of the fcales of tranfpofition. By this means it is very eafy to know diftinctly all the general and particular rules of the combinations and progreffions of founds; which rules it would be almoft impoffible to demonftrate, without the above diftinct and fucceffive order.' This order appears very clear by the fucceffion of the compofitions of the fame fundamental counterpoint, which compofitions are called canons, becaufe every one contains and fhews a law or rule to be obferved in the compofition of mufic; and all the fame canons joined together are called the harmonic code, becaufe it contains all laws and rules of harmony.

This harmonic code is divided into two parts; the firft part contains the divers combinations of the founds, fimple, compound, and full, belonging to the divers motions of the bafs in fimple and natural progreffion : The fecond part contains the fame different combinations belonging alfo to the different motions of the bafs, but in mixed and varied progreffion. The whole code is divided into chapters, and every chapter into articles. Every chapter contains one of the fundamental motions of the bafs; as by fifths or thirds afcending and defcending, and in its articles all different combinations which belong to the fame motion of the chapter, as fimple, compound and full; in fimple progreffion in the firt part, and in mixed in the fecond part of the fame code.

# The First Part of the HARMONIC CODE. C H A P. I. 

## Of the confonant perfect fundamental Movement of the Bafs, comonly called the Skip of Cadence.

The HE movement of the fundamental confonant perfect fkip of cadence is the嚧 principal of all other movements or fundamental fkips, being the more natural, and confequently the more pleafant. It is called perfect, not only becaufe it goes directly to the cadence, by which are perfected all harmonical compofitions, but alfo for being capable of all the gradual compound combinations, as has been mentioned, and as will clearly appear in the following canons in their refpective articles.

## Article I. Of the Confonant Combination. CANONI. Plate 17 .

TH IS combination is called confonant, becaufe it is only compofed of two conifonants, fifth and octave; and becaufe it is not joined with fome harmonic founds, as the third or tenth, cannot be called harmonic.

In this canon the fundamental bafs moves with the perfect confonant 1kip of cadence paffing through all the notes in the natural fcale, accompanied only with the fifth and octave, which changes alternately. The firft part begins with the fifth, which defcending a tone, paffes to the octave of the fucceeding note of the bafs; the fecond part, which
begins with the octave, keeps firm, and is changed into a fifth at the next note by the motion of the bafs: The fame progreffion and combination are continued by the bafs and the parts till the end of the canon ; the two parts, when one defcends, the other keeps firm, proceeding in this manner by fourths and fifths, in defcending the fcale together with the bafs.

Firf N. B. This canon being only confonant, and confequently not harmonic, cannot fubfift in two or three parts; but it is of ufe in five or more parts, for doubling the two confonants, the fifth and octave.

Second N.B. The bafs in the fecond meafure in all canons of fimple progreffion, and alfo with the compound by feven, ufed in this chapter, being in the note F , paffes to the note B , which is a falfe fifth defcending, or a falfe fourth afcending, confequently the note $B$ being deprived of its perfect fifth, may be confidered as a falle fifth, as it is; but this falfe fifth B tor F , being prepared in the antecedent combination of the note F by F its octave, paffes as a juft fifth, and the ear is not offended. Moreover, thefe two notes B and $F$, which are the two indicative notes of the natural fcale, muft neceffarily be diftant fix femitones, by which notes muft alfo the bafs fundamental pafs with its progreffion, notwithftanding that the fame interval is not a perfect fifth; otherways proceeding by a perfect fifth, it tranfpofes immediately the fcale. There is another reafon which arifes from the two principal ftable and immoveable fundamental baffes, but it is omitted, as the explanation would be too long, and the above two reafons being fufficient for practice.

## Articee II. Of the fimple Harmonic Combination.

## CANON II. Plate 17.

THIS canon fhews the rule of ufing the fimple combination, commonly called the common accord, which is compofed by the third, fifth, and octave.

The part which begins with a fifth does not defcend to the octave, as in the firf canon, but afcends a tone higher to give the third to the fucceeding bafs note, which cannot be done by the other parts in a gradual motion. The fame third afcending with the following note, gives the octave to the bafs note, which octave having no other harmonic found, or confonant, near to pafs into, muft reft in its place, as has been done by the fame octave in the firft canon, becoming the fifth to the following bafs note; which fifth paffes to the third, and from the third to the octave, continuing the fame progreffion in all the canon. The other parts proceed in like manner. The firft and fecond part moving by a third and fourth between each other; and the fecond and third parts move by a fifth and fixth between each other, all the parts proceeding in contrary motion to the bafs; the bafs defcending, and the parts afcending, as it appears in the canon.

## Of doubling the two confonant Fifth and OEtave, making fxx real Parts.

$$
\text { CANON III. PLATE } 17 .
$$

THIS canon is formed by the union of the two antecedent, from which union the parts of the fifth and octave being confonant, confequently of a leffer fenfation in refpect to the third, which is harmonic, therefore are doubled. -In this canon is only to be obferved, that the two parts which are doubled defcends with the bafs; on the contrary the three other parts afcend, as in the fecond canon.

By the contrary motion of the parts, the two confonant parts are doubled, without proceeding in unifons in fifth and octave, with the other two parts: The third needs not to be doubled in fimple combination, being perfectly harmonic ; if doubled, it would make the parts lefs fenfible.

# Combound. <br> Article III. Of the Combination. <br> Canon IV. Plate 18 . 

NOW it muft be obferved in what manner the fimple combination may be changed into the compound combination, which is done by adding of two of the fuperior thirds to the fimple combination, as the feventh and ninth, $\mathcal{E} c$. The feventh found of the natural fcale, or whatfoever fcale tranfpofed, or not tranipofed, is the firft third above the other two thirds which compofe the fifth : This feventh is called by pracitioners difonant; and difcord, or falfe, by the Italians, as well as other fuperior thirds, the ninth, eleventh, and thirteenth; but notwithftanding thefe terms (particularly that of diffoinant) are improperly ufed; however, to prevent miftakes, we fhall hereafter ufe the term of difcord or falfe, and alfo the terms of preparation and refolution of the above difcords.

The feventh being confidered as difcord, confequently muft be prepared, which term fignifies that it muft be before a concord in the preceding combination, (the concord founds are the thirds, perfect fifths, and octaves) and after becoming difcord in the fucceeding meafure, or note, it muft become again a concord in the fubfequent note; and this is called refolution of difcords, or falfes. Thefe difcords, with their preparations and refolutions, not only regard the parts with the bafs, but alfo betwixt one another of the fame parts. In this prefent canon, the feventh is prepared by the third, in the firft part, and again refolved into a third, by defcending one note : The fecond part, which begins with a fifth to the bafs note, afcends a note to the third, in order to prepare the feventh, in the next note, which feventh is afterwards refolved into a third, both the parts continuing the fame progreffion alternatively. The two parts proceeding betwixt each other by fourths, refolved into fifths, as in the canon.

## Of the Manner of adding the Fifth, and Octave, to the above Canon.

CaNON V. Plateis.

1N the above canon is wanted the fifth, and octave, to make up the complement of the compound combination to the antecedent fourth canon, which has only the third and feventh; but by adding the firft canon, they will compofe the prefent canon with the third, fifth, feventh, and octave; where the two firt parts proceed betwixt each other by feconds prepared by the thirds, and refolved into thirds; the fame proceeding as between the third and fourth part; this fourth part, with the firft part, moves by fixths, and the fecond with the third part by thirds, but the firft part with the third, alfo the fourth part with the fecond proceeds from the fifths to the fourths, defcending the parts with the bafs, two by two , as it is in the canon.

## Of the Combination of the Ninth.

## CANON VI. Plateif.

THE ninth, being a third above the feventh, which feventh being prepared by the third, and refolved into the third, confequently the ninth muft be prepared by the fifth, and refolved into a fifth in defcending like the feventh. The two parts which compofe this canon, gives alternately the fifth and ninth to the bafs, proceeding between each other by a fifth and fourth, like the feventh.

# The Rule of introducing the Ninth, inftead of the Octave, with the Third, Fifth, and Seventh. <br> Canon Vil. Plate 18. 

BY joining the fourth and fixth canon together, is formed the combination of third, filth, feventh, and ninth, inftead of the octave, as in this canon.

The ninth arifes from keeping firm the fifth, inftead of defcending to the octave; the two parts which moves from the ninth to the fifth, procced betwixt each other by fourths, refolved into fifths; the two higher parts defcend together by thirds, and alfo the two lower parts; only when the two firf parts move, the two lower keep firm, making a combination of third, fifth, and feventh, between them all, and by the two fuperior parts defcending, the feventh is refolved into a fixth, and the fifth paffes into a fourth, which refolves again into a fifth; likewife the two other parts afterwards defcending, the fixth becomes a feventh, and the fourth a fifth, proceeding continually in the fame manner; alfo betwixt the third part, and the two fuperior, which makes an accord of third and fifth, the two higher parts defcending become a fecond and fourth; the third part afterwards defcending the fourth, is refolved into a fifth, and the fecond into a third.
$N . B$. In the fecond bar, or meafure of the firf part, the note $G$, which forms the ninth to the bafs note, and it is afterwards refolved into the fifth $F$, in the following meafure, marked thus *, may at firft fight feem a difcord, becaufe, being a falfe fifth, it may feem not prepared by the antecedent note, as it is prepared in the fecond and third canon, where it is prepared by the octave; but here the ninth is confidered as an appogiature, which is a combination of the fame antecedent note, inftead of the octave, which as octave of the principal relative note of the bafs, fhould always be underftood; and as the fame note F is expreffed in the antecedent meafure by the bafs note, this ferves for the preparation of the falfe fifth, and notwithftanding that the falfe fifth is not prepared by its antecedent note, but the preparation arifing from the other founds, or notes, which may fubfift in the fame combination, the ear is not offended.

## Of joining the Octave to the above Canon, making eight real Parts.

## CANON VIII. Plate ig.

THE difpofition of this canon into cight parts, confifts in uniting the feventh canon with the fecond, in the following manner. It muft take the four parts of the feventh canon, which gives the feventh and ninth to the bafs prepared, and refolved, as in the canon, and the three parts of the fecond canon; by this means the fifths and thirds are doubled, becaufe it being betwixt the feventh and the ninth to the bafs, the octave becomes morc fenfible, as diffonant with the fame feventh and ninth: Befides, as all the fuperior thirds, excepting the fundamental feventh, very often ferves as appogiatures to the following note, and particularly the ninth to the octave, confequently the fame ninth ferves inftead of the doubled octave, and it is at the compofer's pleafure to ufe the octave, or the ninth. If the compofer would fupprefs the ninth, and ufe only the octave, in that cafe the fecond canon munt be joined with the fifth canon, by this means the octaves are doubled like the thirds and fifths. But if the compofer would double the octave, at the fame time when the ninth fubfifts, he mult add two parts more, which are the two confonant parts in the firft canon; this will make a compofition of ten real parts, in which the part which defcends from the ninth to the fifth, proceeds continually by fourths, and confequently, when the fame part which defcends from the fifth to the oftave, is inferior to the other, which defcends from the ninth to the fifth, it proceeds always by fifths; which progreffion is
permitted in compound and full combination, becaufe the harmony is not only complete, but alfo the octave is doubled, as is the fifth; but in fimple combination, it cannot fubfift.

## Of pafing from one Diford to anotber.

## CANON IX: Plate ig.

THIS caion is compounded of three parts, which conftantly keeps firm in the firft fimple combination belonging to the natural fcale, in which the bafs continues its progreffion. The firft part begins with the third to the bafs, which third, according to the rules of fimple combination, would afcend to the octave, but here it keeps firm for the preparation of the feventh, as in the rules of the compound combinations; this feventh, which, according to the fame rules of compound combinations, ought to be refolved in defcending to the third; but keeping firm in the fame note, is changed into the eleventh, commonly called the fourth, by the motion of the bafs: This fourth would have been refolved by the rules of the compound combinations, by defcending to the third, but keeping firm, it is refolved into the octave, by the progreffion of the bafs, which refolution belongs properly to the full combination; after that the octave paffes to the fifth, as in the manner of the fimple combination, which fifth continuing firm in its note, prepares the ninth, and this ninth continuing firm, is changed in the thirteenth, commonly called the fixth, by the progreffion of the bafs, as in full combination; at laft this fixth, or thirteenth, is refolved by the fame bafs into the tenth, or, as commonly called, the third. The other parts proceed in like manner, remaining always firm, all being refolved by the progreflion of the bals.
N.B. This canon cannot be of ufe in the progreffion, as it is, being formed only to fhew the paffage of the feventh and ninth into another difcord, when the fame feventh and ninth may happen in every one of the three parts which compofe the original fimple harmony, fometimes may be continued one or both parts, which begins with the octave, or with the fifth in a long progreffion of the bafs, without changing the fcale, becaufe being both the octaves of the principal, and its guide, as immoveables, and ftable fundamental, which, as has been demonftrated in the antecedent book, may both continue under all combinations in fimple progreffion: In regard to the harmonic third major of the fimple combination, it cannot be ufed freely, being too much fenfible, and confequently it will confound the fimple combination, which belongs to the fucceeding note of the progreffion of the bafs; but in folemn mufic, where all the fimple combinations are tripled, and the compound doubled, may be ufed on fome occafions, as in the canon.

## Article IV. Of full Combination.

## CANON X. Plate 20 .

THE full combination by which this canon is compored, is derived from the union of almoft all the antecedent canons. The firft three parts are the fame as in the antecedent ninth canon, compofing the fimple combination to the loweft principal, unmoveable, fundamental baffes, and all together with the following parts, the full combination to the other baffes. The two following parts, marked 4 and 5 , are the two parts in the firft canon, which doubles the two confonant fifth, and octave. The next eight parts, the fixth, feventh, eight, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, and with the firft following bafs, are the fame which compofe the eighth canon of the compound combination. The two baffes numbred 13 and 14 , proceed betwixt one another from the unifon to the octave, which in full combination are accounted two different parts, becaufe, ftrictly fpeaking, the unifons are not the fame found as the octaves; but in compofitions of lefs than eight parts, they are accounted only as one part, becaufe they have the fame combination, and confe-
quently the fame figures: Thefe two baffes are the fundamentals of the progreffion of every harmonic combination, fo called to diftinguifh them from the laft two ftable and unmoveable fundamental baffes, which continue firm to the end of the canon; the loweft is the

- principal, and the other the guide, as mentioned in the firf book. In this canon all the founds of the octave are continually combined in full or general harmony, in fimple and natural progreffion of the perfect confonant fkip of cadence, which fk ip is the principal of all the progreffions, and to which every other movement are fubfervient and fubordinate. It comprehends all the more natural and common proper preparations and refolutions, as has been explained by the antecedent canons: But becaufe the full Combination is continued. fucceffively all thro' the canon, it cannot be of any ufe in compofitions of figurate harmony, or common mufic, in which the fimple, or compound combination, muft be mixed with the full combination, as will be explained in the laft book. Therefore this canon is put here only to know the derivation of the full harmony, and as an epilogue, or a fummary of all the antecedent canons, confequently it may ferve for a memorandum of all the natural and common rules concerning the different combinations to this fundamental lkip of cadence.

> Article V. Of the Seventh and Ninth pafling to another. Difcord; as commonly ufed.

## CANON XI. Plate 2 I 。

IN the ninth canon it was fhewn in what manner a found may be continued paffing from one difcord to another through all the octave, being at laft refolved by the bafs; but in this canon is Chewn the paffage of one difcord to another, and afterwards their proper refolution in the fecond time, or in the fame note of the bafs in the following meafurè, the notes of the bafs being all doubled for this purpofe. The two firft parts make the feventh and ninth in the fecond meafure ; and the third and fourth parts the fame feventh and ninth in the third meafure; each paffing to the following meafure keeps firm the fame notes which are changed by the progreffion of the bafs from the feventh and ninth into the fourth and fixth, which are immediately refolved in the middle of the fame meafure, the fourth defcending into the third, and the fixth into the fifth. The firft part which gives the ninth to the bafs proceeds with the fecond part by thirds, and with the third part by thirds refolved into fitths, and the fame firt part proceeds with the fourth part by fixths and fevenths, which fevenths are refolved fucceffively into fixths; the fecond part with the third, proceeds by a fecond refolved into a third, and with the fourth part proceeds from third to third, as appears in the canon : Thefe fort of falfes may be called falfes of poftpofition, becaufe the refolution is prolonged or poftponed.

## How to reflove the Seventh and Ninth in afcending.

CANON XII. Plate 21.

THE refolution of the feventh and ninth in afcending muft be done as in the above canon, to the fame note of the bafs, the notes being doubled to the purpofe, the difcord, or falfe, falling in the firlt note of the meafure, and their refolution in the fecond note of the fame meafure, in that manner the falfes notes and their refolutions are diftinctly and clearly perceived. In this canon all the parts proceed with the fame fucceffion of notes: The fifth prepares the ninth to the firft note of the following meafure, and the ninth is refolved by afcending to the third in the fecond note of the fame meafure; the fame third ferves for a preparation to the feventh in the next meafure, and in its firft note; and the fame feventh is refolved afcending to the octave in the fecond note of the fame meafure: The octave paffes to the fifth in the following meafure, which fifth prepares again the ninth in the next meafure, which is refolved by afcending to the third in the fame meafure, continuing in this manner, as it is apparent from the canon. It muft be obferved in this
kind of refolution of thefe falfes afcending, that the difcords derived from thefe preparations, being the fame notes continued, inftead of afcending or defcending for the fimple combination to the motion of the bafs, by which they are changed in difcord, they ought to be confidered as appogiatures in afcending ; but the beft appogiatures are thofe performed in defcending than afcending, as being more natural, and confequently more pleafant. Notwithtanding that the feventh when it properly is a fundamental indicative note defcending, belonging to the fundamental guide, and when the furdamental guide keeps firm, it may afcend to the octave of the fame guide, being its principal note, from whence it derives, To the refolution afcending may be equally good and pleafant: But the ninth refolving afcending to the third it returns far from its principal note, viz. the octave, with a contrary motion; for this reafon it muft be ufed only upon fome particular occafions, as in grand mufic, where all the parts are doubled and tripled.

## Article VI. Of fome uncommon Combinations; and firf, of Falfesby Anticipation afcending.

## CANONS XIII, XIV, XV. Plates 21, 22.

ANticipation is the contrary of the poftpofition, the notes which makes the firft combination to the bafs move afcending to the following combination, before the bafs moves itfelf; and this anticipation being the combination of the next note of the bafs, confequently is a difcord to the exiftent bafs note, which difcord is refolved by the note of the following motion of the bafs, as in the canons. In the thirteenth canon the note which makes the third paffes to the fourth afcending, confequently the bafs has over it the combination of the fourth and fifth, and the fourth ferves by way of anticipation of the octave of the following note of the bafs; and the part which makes the fifth, afcends to the third, which prepares the fourth, which again is refolved by the motion of the bafs into the octave.

The fourteenth canon hews the manner of forming the anticipation with the fourth joined with the fixth to the third and octave, which is done, as the above anticipation of the octave by the fourth; the fixth making the anticipation of the third, as in the canon.

The fifteenth canon is compounded of the thirteenth canon joined with the firtt canon, by which the two confonants are doubled, and the fame firft canon may be added to the fourteenth in order alfo to double the confonants.

## Of the Anticipations in defcending.

## C ANONS XVI, XVII. Plates 22, 23.

THE fixteenth canon is almoft the fame as the fifth canon, the only difference is, that the fifth in canon $V$. defcends directly to the octave in the next meafure; and in this fixteenth canon it defcends into the fourth in the fame meafure, becoming the anticipation of the octave in the next meafure, confequently the combination in the firft part of the meafure is the fifth and feventh, and in the fecond Part of the fame meafure it is the fourth and feventh. The feventeenth canon is the fixteenth, with this difference, that the feventh defcends to the fixth in the fame meafure, which fixth becomes the anticipation to the third, as it appears in the above canon; the bafs having the combination of the fifth and feventh to the firt note of the meafure, and the fourth and fixth to the fecond note of the fame meafure, which fourth and fixth are the anticipations of the third and octave.
$N$. $B$. It muft be obferved, that the anticipations in defcending arifes from the compound harmony, where all the parts defcend with the bafs; on the contrary, on the fimple combination, as the parts afcend, and the bafs defcends, the anticipations muft afcend with the parts.

Second N.B. Thefe anticipations are only ufed in grand mufic of churches, where all the principal parts are doubled, tripled and quadrapled; and particularly, and almoft only, in the full combination of long cadences; and more particularly in the final and laft cadence, which generally holds long for two, three, or more meafures; and every meafure having at leaft two accented times; we muft take care that the anticipation fall not upon the accent time, but upon the part of the meafure which is neareft to the conclufion, and muft ufe them alfo very feldom, and with judgment, all thefe fort of difcords being of unnatural preparation and refolution.

## Article VII. Of the Difcords called by the Italian Mafters Falfes by Cbange. <br> CANON XVIII. Plate 23 .

THIS canon is compofed of ten real Parts to two chorufes, from which appears the rule and manner of changing the fuperior thirds or difcords, called falfes by change, and their refolutions from one to another part.

The fecond part of the firft chorus makes in the fecond meafure the third, which is A to the fundamental bafs, and in the fame fecond meafure, marked thus $\left(A^{*}\right)$; defcend from the third $A$ in $G$, making the ninth to the fame bafs, which ninth is refolved into the fifth to the bafs in the following meafure. The fecond part of the fecond chorus in the fame fecond meafure, whofe firft note is $G$, ninth to the fundamental bafs of the fecond chorus, and in the fecond time of the fame meafure, alfo marked thus ( $A^{*}$ ), afcends to the note $A$, refolving the ninth into the third to the fame note of the bafs of the fecond chorus: By this means the two fecond parts of the firft and fecond chorus change each other their founds, and notwithftanding this change, both continuing the fame combination to the bafs. The third part of the firft chorus in the fecond meafure, is in the Note F, which is the octave of the bafs in the fame firft chorus, and this octave prepares the feventh in the fecond note of the fame meafure, marked $\left({ }^{*}\right)$; and the third part in the fecond chorus in the fame fecond meafure, which alfo is marked $\left(\mathrm{B}^{*}\right)$, has the note E , which is the feventh to its bafs, which feventh is immediately refolved in the fame meafure by afcending to $F$ the octave of the bafs, with the fecond note of the fame meafure: Thefe two parts of the thecond chorus change alfo their notes, without changing the compound combination of their bafs; only that the bafs of the firft chorus has the fimple combination in the firft note of the meafure, and the compound in the fecond note of the fame meafure : On the contrary, the fecond bafs of the fecond chorus hath its compound combination in the firft note of the meafure, and the fimple in the fecond note of the fame meafure, which difference changes not the order of the harmony, the total combination being fill continued notwithftanding the above change.

## C H A P. II.

## Of the Progreffion by the imperfect Confonant Skip of the Guide, with all its Combinations; and firft with the Confonant Combination.

## Article I.

N this natural and fimple progreffion of the imperfect confonant Ikip of guide, defcribed in this chapter, the bafs from the principal note of the natural fcaie C , afcends to the fifth note G, which is its fundamental guide, but immediately the fame note $G$ changes the quality of guide, becoming the principal note of its own relative fcale, becaufe it afcends fucceffively to the note $D$, which is its fifth note, and confequently its relative guide; and by afcending the fcale with the progreflion of the fame imperfect confonant fkip of guide, the harmony paffes fucceffively through all the divers guides of the fcales relative to the firft principal fcale, preventing by this manner the final cadence, and by this means deceiving the expectation of the ear. The bafs, by this progreffion, afcends the fcale, together with its two confonant notes, the fifth and octave, alfo with the compound harmony; but the fimple combination defcends in contrary motion of the bafs, and of the confonant, and compound combination; which proceeding is the oppofite of the proceeding by the perfect 1kip of cadence, by which the bafs, joined with the confonant, on compound combination, defcends the fcale, and the fimple afcends the fcale on the contrary motion of the bafs. In this progreffion of the guide, the harmony can only proceed to the note E , becaufe the following note of this progreffion is the note $B$, which is deprived of its confonant fifth in the natural fcale, having the falfe fifth, which cannot be prepared in the antecedent combination of this progreffion. This is the firft reafon which fhews the imperfection of the fame imperfect confonant motion, or fkip of guide ; and another reafon is, that it cannot be compounded immediately with the two firt fuperior thirds, the feventh and ninth, becaufe they cannot be prepared in the antecedent combination, which feventh and ninth, being the neareft difcord to the principal note of the fcale, confequently are the propereft founds of the compound combination.

## CANON XIX. Plate 24.

THIS canon has the octave, which afcends to the fifth in the next note, and the fifth keeping firm in the next meafure, is changed into the octave, proceeding in this manner all along the canon, afcending with the bafs, without paffing the note $E$, for the reafon above-mentioned.

## Article II. Of the fimple Harmonic Combination.

$$
\text { CANON XX. Plate } 24 .
$$

THE progreffion in this canon differs from that of the antecedent canon, (as mentioned above) in which the two confonant parts afcend with the bais, but in this canon the parts all defcend contrary to the bafs. The combination differs from that of the fecond canon of the antecedent chapter; in which fecond canon, by the motion of the perfect confonant fkip of cadence, the fifth afcends to the third; this paffes afcending to the octave, and this keeping firm, is changed into the fifth; but in this progreffion of the imperfect confonant dkip of guide, the octave muft defcend to the third, and the third
defcends to the fifth; this fifth refting firm, is changed into the octave, by the motion of the bafs.

## CANON XXI. Plate 24.

THIS canon fhews the manner of doubling the two confonant notes, the fifth and octave, which is done in the fame manner as the third canon, that is, by joining the confonant combination of canon xix. with the following canon xx. becoming a compofition of fix parts.

## Article III. Of the Compound Combination.

## CANONS XXII, XXIII. Plates 24, 25.

1N this progreffion there cannot be introduced the feventh and ninth, thefe not being comprehended in the antecedent combination, as mentioned before; but inftead of the feventh and ninth, may be added the two fuperior thirds, the eleventh and thirteenth, commonly called the fourth and fixth, which being far diftant from the fimple combinotion, are confidered as difcords; therefore thefe two founds, being part of the preceding combination, may fubfift in the following combination, as in the two canons xxii. and xxiii.

The canon xxii. fhews the manner of introducing the eleventh or fourth with the fifth, the eleventh being prepared in the octave, and refolved into the third in the fame meafure. The canon xxiii. fhews the preparation and refolution of the thirteenth or fixteenth, joined with the eleventh, as it is expreffed in the canon. In this fort of fundamental combination, the notes of the bafs, and of the parts, muft all be doubled, becaufe the refolution of thofe difcords muft be done to the fame note of the bafs, which is the fame note as the firft, and becomes a principal relative, which afcending to the fifth in the next meafure, the bafs paffes into its following relative guide, the fame order continuing in all the progreffion of this canon. Thefe falfes in both thefe canons are properly falfes of poftpofitions.

Article IV. Of the Anticipations.

## Canons XXiV, XXV. Plate 25.

THE anticipation in this progreflion arifes from the feventh to the third, as in canon xxiv. and from the ninth the anticipation of the fifth, as in canon xxv. The feventh is prepared by defcending from the octave in the fame meafure, and afterwards it is refolved by the motion of the bafs into the third. The ninth is alfo prepared in defcending from the thiid in the fame meafure ; and in the next meafure it is refolved into the fifth, by the motion of the bafs. The firft of thefe two canons has only the combination of the feventh, and the fecond canon is combined with both the feventh and the ninth ; the feventh is the anticipation of the third, and the ninth to the fifth, as it is clearly defcribed in the above canons.
$N . B$. Befides what has been faid in the fecond note, after canon xvii. at the end of the article VI. chap. I. of this book, it muft be obferved, that thefe anticipations are refolved contrary to the rule of refolutions, which is, that the difcord or falfes muft be refolved by the fame parts, which makes the fame falfes in fyncoping, or moving. This general rule has fome exceptions, but thefe exceptions feem not applicable to the anticipations in this progreflion of the prefent imperfect confonant fkip of guide ; therefore the beft way is never to make ufe of them.

## C H A P. III.

# Of the perfect Auxiliar Skip of a Third low. 

## Article I.

 HE perfect confonant fkip of cadence, by its proper motion, cannot gradually afcend the fcale; but by the help of this harmonic auxiliar fkip of a third low, it may afcend continually by tones and femitones.
## CANON XXVI. Plate 26.

THIS canon only fhews, that this perfect auxiliar harmonic fkip is not properly fundamental in continual progreffion, but derived from the perfect confonant fkip of cadence, to which it is particularly fubordinate, notwithftanding it bears all fundamental combination, as its true fundamental bafs, which appears by the following canons.

Article II. Of the Simple Combination to the fuppoled fundamental $B a f s$, which Combination is compounded in the true fundamental Ba/s.

CANONS XXVII, XXVIII, XXIX, XXX. Plates $26,27$.

THE following four canons have every one two baffes; the firft, which is the fuppofed fundamental bafs, defcends continually by thirds, but the loweft is the true one.

The canon xxvii. is with fimple combination to the fuppofed fundamental bafs, but the fame combination becomes compound to the true fundamental bafs, becaufe the note which makes the fifth to the firft bafs, is the feventh to the fecond, the very fundamental bafs; and this feventh is refolved into the octave, by afcending to the fame note of the fecond bafs, its octave; which octave keeping firm, it changes into the third of the fuppofed fundamental bafs, but is the fifth to the true fundamental bafs. This manner of refolving the feventh, in afcending to the octave of the bafs, is always good, as mentioned in the explanation of canon xii. plate 2 I.

The canon xxviii. fhews the rule for adding the feventh to the fuppofed fundamental bafs, which feventh is the ninth to the true fundamental with its refolution in defcending; the refolution of the feventh into the octave, is a refolution by fuppofition, becaufe the feventh is in the place of the ninth to the true fundamental bafs, and this refolution into the octave in defcending together with the fuppofed bafs, pafles for good, for being the proper refolution of the ninth, notwithftanding that the firf bafs defcending a third in the fame time that the part defcends a fecond, the fame bafs muft neceflarily proceed by two octaves, not explicit, but implicit: Moreover the fame refolution is not only fupported, as being by fuppofition, but alfo becaufe the combination of the founds is complete, in which the two Octaves, or two fifths following each other, are confidered as double parts.

In canon xxix. the firft bafs has the feventh and octave combined in the firf notes of the fecond and the following meafure, and the feventh and ninth to the fecond note of the fame meafure ; but the two notes in every meafure of the fundamental bais being the fame notes, they have continually the combination of the feventh and ninth. The derivation of thefe falfes, and their refolutions, appear very clearly by their canons. The fuppoled fundamental bafs defcending a third, and the part which gives the feventh keeping firm the fame note all the meafure, the fame feventh is changed into the ninth in the fecond part of the fame meafure by the motion of the fuppofed fundamental bals; as likewife the
fifth into the feventh, and the third into the fifth; therefore both the notes of the meafure, being part of the proper combination to the fame bafs, confequently the firft notes of every meafure are falfes of fuppofition, which by the motion of the fame bafs in the fame meafure are changed into the proper fundamental falfes in the fecond notes, which after are refolved by fuppofition of the fuppofed fundamental bafs with the firft note of the following meafure, as it is clearly apparent in the canon.

The canon xxx. has the refolutions of all the compound combination in afcending, before the fundamental bafs moves; confequently in the fuppofed fundamental bafs all the falfes and their refolutions are by fuppofition.
$N . B$. The refolution of the ninth afcending a full tone to the true fundamental bafs, becomes a little harfh, as its proper refolution is in defcending to the octave, which is its principal note ; therefore the refolution of the ninth afcending, when the fundamental bafies fubfift, muft only be ufed in full harmony, where all the notes are doubled and tripled.

## C H A P. IV.

## Of the perfect Auxiliar Skip of Third low joined with the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence.

Article I.

HE perfect auxiliar harmonic fkip becomes fundamental, when it is followed by the two confonant perfect and imperfect fkips, but properly with the perfect confonant 1 kip of Cadence, which is the fubject of this article.

## CANON XXXI. Plate 27 .

THE bafs in this canon defcending by its firf motion a third in the fecond part of the meafure, becomes the relative guide to the following note in the next meafure, to which following note in the next meafure it moves with the fundamental fkip of cadence. The octave, and the third in the fecond and third parts, keeping firm all the meafure, are changed, the octave into the third, and the third into the fifth, by the fecond note of the bafs in the fame meafure, and in the next meafure the fifth afcends to the third, and the third in the lower part afcends to the octave. The firft part, which begins with the fifth to the bafs, paffes to the octave in the fame meafure; and the octave in the next meafure is changed into the fifth by the motion of the bafs.
$N . B$. It muft be obferved in thefe canons, that as the progreffion of the bafs is made with different fkips, confequently the combinations muft be different. In the auxiliar fkip the octaves and the third keep firm, and in the confonant fkip of cadence the third paffes into the octave, the octave is changed into the fifth, and the fifth afcends to the third, as has been fhewn in the canons of the progreffion of the fame perfect fkip of cadence in the firft chapter.

## Article II. Of the Compound Combination to the fame Progreffon. <br> CANONS XXXII, XXXIII, XXXIV. Plates $27,28$.

THE principal thing to be obferved in thefe three canons is the manner of preparing and refolving the fuperior thirds or difcords, which manner differs in the auxiiiar fkip from that of the confonant lkip of cadence, as above-mentioned. In the fkip of cadence the feventh is always prepared by the third, and refolved into the third, as may be feen in the canons of the third article, chap. I. But when the bafs fkips a third low, or a fixth high, as in the canons of this fecond article, the fifth keeping firm, prepares and becomes the feventh, which is refolved into the third, becaufe the bafs then moves with the fkip of cadence; but when the fame feventh is prepared by the third in the fkip of cadence, as in canon xxxiii. the fame feventh becomes the ninth by the bafs note falling a third, which ninth is refolved into a fifth by the kip of cadence, according to the rules for the refolutions in the fame fkip. Likewife the ninth when prepared by the fifth in the fkip of cadence, inftead of being refolved into the fifth, it is refolved into the third by the auxiliar fkip: Allo the feventh, when it is not joined with the ninth, is refolved into the octave by the fame auxiliar fkip, as in canon xxxii. In the fame canon xxxii. is the rule for joining the feventh with the octave; and in canon xxxiii. is hhewn the rule for joining the feventh with the ninth only in the fkip of cadence; and in the following canon xxxiv. is the rule for joining the feventh and ninth to both the lkips of the progreffion in the compound combination of eight real parts, which is made by joining the canon xxxi. with any one of the two following canons.

## C H A P. V.

# Of the fame Harmonic Skip joined with the imperfect Confonant Skip of Guide. 

CANONS XXXV, XXXVI. Plate 28.

HE canon xxxv. hews, that this 1kip, joined with the 1kip of guide, cannot be continued, but only for a few meafures, becaufe the note $B$ has not its perfect fifth in fimple and natural progreffion; and the canon $x x x v i$. Thews, that the perfect auxiliar fkip is improper with the fkip of guide, becaufe there is another better fundamental bafs, which is the propereft fundamental; therefore it is evident, that this harmonic 1kip a third low, or a fixth high, can only properly be joined with the perfect confonant lkip of cadence, from whence it derives, and to which it is its proper auxiliar fkip.

## C H A P. VI.

## Of the imperfect Auxiliar Harmonic Skip of a Third high, or a Sixth low, in continual Progreffion.

CANONS XXXVII, XXXVIII. Plate 29.

 HE lower bafs is added to both thefe two canons, in order to fhew, that the firft bafs, which afcends by thirds, is not fundamental, but derived from the imperfect confonant 1kip of guide, by which fkip of guide the lower true fundamental bafs moves, notwithftanding that the firft bafs, which proceeds by the perfect auxiliar fkip, may be treated as fundamental, namely, joined with the fundamental combination of founds, but cannot be long continued in fimple and natural progreflion, for the imperfect fifth to the note $B$.

In canon xxxvii. the third part, which begins with the octave to the bafs notes, defcends in the fame meafure, and gives the fifth to the fecond note of the firft fuppofed fundamental bafs, which 1 kips a third high, which fifth is the feventh to the lower true fundamental bafs; and this feventh, which is the fifth to the firft bafs, fuppofed fundamental (as above-mentioned) properly is an anticipation of the third, in the next meafure to both the baffes. Alfo in canon xxxviii. the feventh to the fuppofed fundamental bafs, which is the ninth to the lower true fundamental bafs, is an anticipation to the fifth, in the next meafure ; and really every note in both thefe two canons, are all anticipations, and very difagreeable to the ear; and if they can be fuffered, muft be only in quick movements, as paffing notes.

## Of the fame Auxiliar Skip, joined with the perfect Skip of Cadence.

## CANONS XXXIX, XL, XLI. Plates 29, 30.

THE canon xxxix. is with fimple combination, and the canon xl. with the compound combination, which combinations are fufficiently explained by looking on the faid canons.

The canon xli. fhews, that the other two antecedent canons are improper, and confequently cannot give any pleafure, having the fame improper foundation.
N.B. It mutt be obferved, that in this progreffion of the firft note of the bafs, fkipping a third high to the fecond note in the fame meafure, the combination paffes by the guide, with the fkip of cadence, into the firft notes of the following meafures, confequently all the firft notes of each meafure may be confidered as principal, and the fecond notes of the fame meafure, as relative guides; and as all thefe principal firft notes are diffant a third between themfelves, in defcending a third low, the progreffion becomes improper, becaufe it cannot be fundamental, as has been demonftrated by canon xxvi. with this difference, that the progreffion in the faid canon xxvi. defcends directly and fucceffively by thirds, and the proper foundation of the fame progreffion is the fimple natural fkip of cadence; but in this prefent canon, as in the two antecedent canons, the progreffion being made by two different fkips , confequently its true fundamental bafs muft be different from that of the faid 26th canon, as it is in this canon; from which it appears, that the three following notes defcending by thirds, notwithftanding they are joined with another 1 kip, cannot be all fundamental, but one or two ; the fundamental bafs cannot conftantly fubfift in a like progreffion, as it appears in the two above canons xxxix, and xl.

# C H A P. VII. The fame Auxiliar Skip joined with the Skip of Guide. <br> CANON XLII. Plate 30. 



HIS canon is added here to demonftrate, that the progreffion of the imperfect auxiliar Kkip , joined with the imperfect confonant 1 kip of guide, is improper for many reafons; the firft is, that in the courfe of the progreflion, the harmony will fall upon the note $B$, the falfe fifth of which cannot be prepared; fecondly, that all the firft notes of every meafure paffing by the fecond skip of guide into the firft note of the following meafure, only diftant a fecond below the firft note of the antecedent meafure, and becaufe, that the fame progreffion may more properly be made by the fimple procefs of the perfect confonant skip of cadence, in which procefs the falfe fifth to the note B , is prepared, as has been explained in the firft and fecond canons of chapter I. confequently the skip of third high, joined with the skip of guide, becomes unnatural, and improper in its progreflion; therefore, from what has been faid, this skip of third high, joined with the skip of guide, is of little ufe in fimple, natural progreffion; and it muft be ufed with moderation upon fome occafions, but never in continued progreffion.

## C H.A P. VIII.

## Of the divers Combinations to the fimple and natural Progreffion, with all the four Skips of the fundamental Bafs.

CANONS XLIII, XLIV, XLV. Plates $31,32$.

HESE three canons contained in this laft chapter of the firft part of this Harmonic Code, are compofed by the four fundamental skips, the two confonant, and the two harmonic auxiliar ; confequently the preparations, and the refolutions of the difcords become different, every one being relative to its particular skip of the bafs, as has been explained in their refpective canons.

The canon xliii. is in fimple combination, and the xlivth in compound. The canon xlv. fhews the manner of introducing the full combination, according to the particular rules to every fundamental skip. To the fame laft canon xlv. of full combination, is put under the firft bafs, a fecond bafs; the firft is the fundamental bais of progreffion, the fecond is the fundamental, ftable, and immoveable bafs, which has in its firf note the principal note of the fcale, joined with its fifth, which is its fundamental ftable guide, into which it paffes immediately with the following note in the next meafure, and continues firm to the laft meafure, in which it refolves, returning in the firft note of the fcale, which is the principal ftable foundation of the fame fcale, as has been explained in chapter IV. article I. firft book. In the firft meafure of the fame canon, the bafs has the firft principal fundamental note of the fcale, which has its fifth joined above it ; in the fecond meafure it pafies directly, joining its fifth, which is its fundamental flable guide, at the fame time that the fuperior fundamental bafs of progreffion, moving with the skip of cadence, paffes to the note $F$, which is the fubprincipal relative of the fcale natural : Thefe two different motions happening at the fame time, may at firft fight be fuppofed a difcord, becaufe the note $F$ was not in the antecedent combination, but was the note $G$, as fifth, and fundamental guide, which as fimple fifth was joined in the firft meafure to its principal, which, as before faid, becomes,
becomes, in the fecond meafure, the ftable fundamental guide, which by the fame note in the firft meafure, upon the fame bafs, prepares the note $F$, in which the firft bafs of progreflion has paffed; alfo its third, which becomes the ninth to the under bafs ftable; and in regard of the other fuperior thirds to the fame note $F$, as the fifth and feventh, which are alfo prepared by the antecedent combination; thefe become the eleventh and thirteenth to the ftable fundamental bafs, which in this manner has the full combination of the feventh, ninth, eleventh and thirteenth, as is expreffed in the canon. The following meafure, in which the fundamental bafs of progreffion paffes to the note D , with the compound combination of $3,4,5,6,7,8,9$, the combination of the ftable fundamental bafs is augmented with the fifth, which properly is the twelfth; and in the following fourth meafure, where both barfes are united, both have the fame full combination, which is refolved into the fimple combination in the next meafure, paffing with the fame fimple combination into the final note of the cadence. From this canon it appears, that the fundamental feventh fometimes may be ufed without apparent preparation in final cadences, fuppofing the principal note doubled; but in this cafe the harmony muft be complete, confequently it cannot be ufed in lefs than four parts. The other feventh, which is not fundamental, but relative, muft be always prepared.

Here is the end of the explanation of the canons relative to all forts of combination of founds belonging to the fimple and natural progreffion; therefore we fhall pafs to the fecond part, which contains in its canons all the laws and rules of the combination of founds belonging to the mixed and varied progreffion in its fucceffive order, and fhewing the proper manner of tranfpofing the two principal fcales, natural and artificial, in every femitone of the fcales of tranfpofition.


# THE <br> <br> HARMONIC CODE. <br> <br> HARMONIC CODE. <br> <br> P A R T II. 

 <br> <br> P A R T II.}


N the firft part of the Harmonic Code has been hhewn all the laws and rules of all poffible combinations of founds belonging to every one of the fundamental motions of the bafs in the fimple and natural progreffion, through all the eight original founds. And in this fecond part will be fhewn the fame laws and rules of every combination of founds belonging to all the fame different fundamental motions of the bafs, but in mixed and varied progreffion, namely, the bafs paffing through all the thirteen founds of the fcale of tranfpofition.

Firf N. B. In the mixed progrefion all tranfpofed fcales become principal of their own fcale, confequently every one has its feven relative fcales, in which the progreffion may pafs at pleafure with its proper harmony.

Second N.B. The founds of the tranfpofed fcales muft be in the fame order of the principal fcale, from which they are derived; if derived from the natural fcale, the third muft be major, the fourth, fifth, and octave, all perfect; and the fixth, feventh, and ninth all major; the feventh to the guide, which in general muft be flat, but on fome occafions may be major, and the tranfpofed fcales from the artificial fcale, the third muft be minor, the fourth, fifth, and octave, all perfect; the fixth and feventh in defcending the fcale muft be flat, but both fharp in afcending; the feventh to the fundamental guide muft be flat, as alfo the ninth, but on fome occafions the ninth may be ufed fharp, as will appear from the canons.

Third N. B. The beft and moft pleafant manner of compofitions, is not only derived from the perfect knowledge of all combinations of founds, and their propereft and natural progreffion, but alfo from the good tafte of the compofer, in regard to the juft and beft application of the fame combinations and progreffions to the different expreflions, as gay, or pathetic, from which arifes many particular rules; between thefe rules the harmony requires an eafy and proper variety, by which the human fenfation is extremely delighted ; confequently the progreffion of all thefe canons defcribed in the Harmonic Code, being continued all along the whole octave, in the firf part, and all along the femitones in the fecond part, becomes improper and tirefome, and many, particularly in the fecond part, impracticable, becaufe the bafs moving continually with perfect fifths defcending or afcending, fome parts in the combination are obliged to proceed continually by full tones, contrary to the order of the gradual progreffion of the natural fcale, which proceeds by tones and femitones; and this order muft be followed in all forts of progreffions, and their combinations; therefore all thefe canons contained in this Harmonic Code, muft be confidered, not in their continual progreffion, but only in their feparate particular progreffion, as only in three or four motions, having been compofed all along the octave, and all along the femitones only, to fhew all the particular combinations and progreffions in pafing from every tone and femitone to their nearer tone and femitone by the different motions or fkips of the fundamental bafs; and not for an example of a long progreffion, which muft always be avoided.

## C H A P. I.

# Of the perfect Confonant Skip of Cadence tranfpofing the Natural Scale into all the Semitones, with only the Confonant Combination. 

Articie I.<br>CANON XLVI. Plate 33.


#### Abstract

\% T HIS canon fhews in what manner the fundamental bafs, joined only with the two confonant fifth, and octave, paffes through all the twelve intervals of the icale of 20: fcale by its perfect confonant fkip of cadence : By this means there arifes thirteen fcales, all principal; but the laft being the fame as the firft, is excluded, twelve remaining only, which are different in their founds, but not in the order of their intervals: The fifth note of every fcale is always the fundamental guide to the fame fcale, and its principal note becomes alfo the fundamental guide to the next tranfpofed fcale, confequently the bafs proceeding continually with its Ikip of cadence, every note muft be confidered as principal of their own fcale and guide fundamental to the next note.


Firf N.B. In fimple progreffion the bafs cannot go out of the eight original founds of the natural fcale; and this is the reafon that one of its fifths muft be falfe, which is that from B to F afcending, or from F to B defcending, as has been explained by the fecond note, at the end of article I. chap. I. of the firft part; but in mixed progreflion, where the bafs can have its perfect fifth, by ufing the femitones of the fcale of tranfpofition, it paffes fucceffively through all the thirteen founds of the fame fcale of tranfpofition.

Second N.B. It muft be obferved, that in the feventh meafure of this confonant canon, the bafs paffes from G flat to B natural ; this may be taken for a falfe fkip of cadence, but G flat being the fame found as F fharp, both which are diftant from B natural feven femitones, confequently is a perfect confonant fifth defcending; alfo the fifth of G flat is D flat; from this D flat defcending to B natural, as it is done by the fuperior firft part of the canon, may feem a fkip of a third low; but D flat being the fame found as C fharp, diftant a tone from the fame B , confequently it defcends only a fecond, and not a third; alfo the octave of the fame G flat in the fecond part, paffing to F fharp, changes the name, but not the found, which confitute the fame. All which fhews clearly, that the different denominations cannot alter the founds, which are always the fame; and alfo fhews, that the diftinction of the major and minor femitone is incompetent to the melody and harmony.

[^2]the fame B natural, comprehending its oftave, grave and acute, are tranfpofed in B flat, which is a femitone lower; and when in the progrefs of the compofition another $b$ mole, or flat, happens to the fame b flat, this diminifles-it another femitone, and becomes A natural, which is called $B$ extreme flat, as may be found in fome of the canons.

Article II. Of the fame Tranfpofition, with the fimple Harmonic Combination.

## C AN ON XLVII. Plate 33.

THIS canon being in fimple combination, and as the natural fcale is formed with a major third, fifth and octave both perfect, fo likewife in all the tranfpofed fcales, by which the bafs paffes, the fimple combination muft be in the fame order with the third major, perfect fifth and octave, as in the canon.

Article III. The fame Transpopition with the compound Combination of the Seventh.

## CANON XLVIII. Plate 33.

1N the firft chapter of the firft part of this code, Articles iv. and vi. it has been fhewn, that in the perfect confonant 1 kip of cadence the feventh is always prepared by the third, and the ninth by the fifth, and refolved into the fifth ; but as in the firft part of this code the harmony proceeds only from one found to another of the natural fcale, in which the principal note, its fourth, and its fifth, have all their thirds major; and the others, as the fecond, third, fixth and feventh, have all their thirds minor; confequently when the fundamental bafs proceeds with the fkip of guide in the fame natural fcale, the feventh will be major, or minor, according to the antecedent third from which it is prepared; alfo the ninth, if the fifth by which it is prepared is falfe, will likewife be minor; as when the bafs paffes from $B$ to $E$ the ninth is minor, becaufe the fifth to $B$ is $F$ natural, which is a falfe fifth from which it is prepared, and confequently the ninth being alfo diftant a femitone from the octave, and the above preparation by the falfe fifth, is fupported, as has been demonftrated in the fecond $N$. B. of the firft article, firft chapter, in the firft part of this code. But in the mixt progreffion with the fame Ikip of cadence, as all the notes which the bafs paffes through are principal of a new tranfpofed fcale, and at the fame time fundamental guide of the next note, into the fcale is fucceffively tranfpofed, and having, as fundamental guide the major third its indicative note, confequently this fame third muft prepare the following feventh, which is fundamental and indicative note, becaufe a principal note of a new fcale follows; therefore the fame feventh as fundamental indicative defcending, mult be minor, or flat; for this reafon the major third, which muft ferve as preparation of the above feventh in the antecedent meafure, muft be diminifhed in the next meafure of a femitone, to make the flat feventh, as may be feen in this canon. Eitt this feventh being diminifhed a femitcne from the note by which it has been prepared, confequently it has been prepared by a different found, the third major being not the fame found of the third minor; therefore the preparation is improper, and rigoroully falfe, netwithfanding that this fort of preparation are fuppofed good by almoft all the compofers of mufic, becaufe they make no diftinction betwixt the major and the minor third, when they ferve for the preparation of any difcord; but a better reafon is, that the major third, is the fundamental indicative afcending note, and changing from the major into a minor, it becomes the fundamental feventh, and it is changed in this manner from the indicative note aicending into the indicative defcending note, and the bafs note is alfo changed from the principal note into the fundamental guide; this kind of feventh may be fupported without preparation, being fundamental.
$N . B$. This fort of combination may pafs for a few meafures in fome pathetic expreflions; but in a long progreffion, as in the canon, it becomes tedious and tirefome; for which reafon it is better not to change the major third into a minor third for the preparation of the feventh, by which means all the notes preferve the quality of principals of their own .fcales; but the quality of the fundamental guide is changed into a relative guide to the next note, as it is in the following canon.

## Of the fame Transpofition with' the Seventh and Ninth, both natural, as in their refpective Scales.

CANON XLIX. Plate 34.

IN this canon becaufe the feventh is not minor, but natural, as it is in its proper fcale, confequently it is not fundamental, but only a relative guide; the ninth which is added, becomes alfo relative, notwithftanding it may fubfift as fundamental, being the tranfpofition of the natural fcale, and the whole progreffion is made by perfect fifths from which they are prepared, and into which they are refolved.

## Of tranfpofing the artificial Scale with fimple Accord. CANON L. Plate 34:

THIS cannon hews the manner of tranfpofing the artificial fcale with fimple combination, namely the minor third, fifth, and octave, by the above fame progreffion; which combination muft be ufed in every found where the fame fcale may be tranfpofed. All the notes in this canon are principal of their own fcale, and at the fame time guides, but relative to their fucceeding note, and not fundamental, becaufe their firft third is not major, as it muft be major in the combination belonging to all fundamental guides, as has been explained.
Article IV. The fame Tranjpofition weith the compound Accord of the Seventb.

## Canon LI. Plate 34.

TH IS canon wants no explication ; the feventh being very well prepared by the minor third, and very well refolved into the minor third : All notes are principal of their own fcale, and guides relative to the next tranfpofed fcale.

## Of the fame Tranfpofition with the Ninth inflead of the Octave.

## CANON LII. Plate $35^{\circ}$

THERE are two different ways of joining the ninth to the feventh inftead of the eighth, that is, either with the major or minor ninth. It was mentioned in the fixth Chapter, Article iv. of Book I. that the artificial fcale had two fcales, one for afcending, the other for defcending; in afcending the fixth and feventh are major in all fcales tranfpofed from the artificial ; but in defcending, the fixth and feventh muft be minor; the major fixth in afcending belongs properly to the order of melody; becaufe, as men.tioned, the melody cannot gradually pars to the next feventh, which muft neceffarily be fharp to afcend to the octave of the principal note; confequently this major fixth can only belong by accident to the bafs note in the fundamental guides of the artificial fcales, in changing the fame fundamental guides into relative guides, which fundamental guides muft have the combination of the major third, fifth, and octave; and when the fame accord is joined with the feventh and ninth, thefe muft both be flat, or minor: but in this
prefent canon, the guide being deprived of its. fharp third, which is the neceffary indicative note of the fucceflive fcale, confequently it cannot be fundamental, but-only relative, which relative guides are always improper in tranfpofing the fcale ; and when the guide is fundamental, the fifth of the antecedent note muft be diminifhed a femitone for the flat ninth belonging to the fundamental guide, which ninth becomes a minor fecond to the octave of the fame guide; and this fecond to the octave note, or minor ninth to the bafs, being done in moving both parts, confequently is not properly prepared, notwithfanding it derives from the fifth of the antecedent note, but derives from the fame name, and not from the fame found. For example, the fifth to the firft principal note C , as in the canon, is $G$ natural, the bafs paffing into $F$, the fame note $G$ fifth muft be diminihed one femitone for the minor ninth to the bafs note $F$, and $G$ natural becomes flat ; it is the fame G, but being flat, the found is changed, and altered one femitone : Befides the fame combination of the fifth pafing into the ninth proceeds always by falfe filths one with another, which together become not very pleafant to the ear; for thefe reafons the major ninth becomes lefs unpleafant, being prepared by the perfect fifth without any alteration in the founds, and in the progreffion the fifth and ninth move by the fourth and fifth, notwithftanding that it is always improper in a long progrefion, becaufe the tranfpofition of the fcales muft be done by the fundamental guides, and not by the relatives: Therefore the beft way of proceeding with the combination of the ninth, in changing the fcale, is in doubling all the notes of the parts and the bafs; in this manner may be diftinguifhed the principal notes from the guides, as it is done in the following canon.
$N$. B. Here is put only a canon with the major, or natural ninth, which canon may be eafily changed in puting to every ninth a flat, to have both the canons of the two manners of imploying the ninth.

Article V. Of the fame Tranfpofition in the bef Marner.

$$
\text { Canon lili. Plate } 35 .
$$

THIS canon fhews the beft manner of fucceffively tranfpofing the artificial fcale, with and by the proper fundamental guide in compound combination with its major third, perfect fifh, feventh and ninth both flat; this muft be done by doubling the notes of every part, and the bafs in all the meafures, as it is in the canon. The firft bafs note of every meafure is a principal note of its own fale joined with its fimple combination of minor third, fifth and octave. The fecond note in the fame meafure, which is the fame as the firft note, is the fundamental guide to the next principal note in the following meafure; which note being tranfpofed from the antecedent artificial fcale has the fame combination of the minor third, fifth and octave, proceeding in the fame manner through the canon. All the firt notes are principal, and the fecond notes of every meafure all fundamental guides, with their proper compound combination of the indicative afcending major third, fifth, feventh, and the indicative defcending ninth. The firft part in the canon, which gives the minor third to the bafs principal note, this minor third is changed in the fecond note of the fame meafure into the major third indicative of the following firf principal note of the tranfpofed fcale in the next meafure, in which meafure the fame indicative third major afcends to the octave of the principal note in the bafs ; and this octave deficends into the feventh with the fecond note of the fame meafure; which feventh is refolved into a minor third of the next meafure, and this minor third being again changed in the indicative major third, afcends as before to the octave, proceeding continually in the fame manner. The fecond part, which gives the octave to the bafs in the firft meafure, and in the fecond meafure it is changed in the fifth from which it paffes in the following meafure to the minor third, in the fecond note of the fame meafure defcends to the ninth, which is the indicative defcending note of the fundamental guide of the artificial fcale, and in the following meafure defcending a femitone it refolves into the fifth; which fifth kceping firm all the meafure, in the next meafure afcends to the minor third, which defcending a full
tone pafies to the ninth, as before, proceeding always in the fame manner: All the others proceed alfo in the fame manner as the above two firft. By this means the fimple combination belonging to the artificial, and its tranfpofed fcales, paffes into the compound accord with its fecond note, the bafs keeping firm its proper fundamental note, and the compound combination is refolved again into the fimple combination in the next meafure, as it clearly appears in the canon; in which are fome notes with double flats, as has been mentioned in the third N.B. at the end of the firft article of this chapter, to which double flats we muft take care ; and to avoid miftakes, the fame note has been abundantly marked with a crofs under the double flat note, as it is in this canon.

## Article VI. Of tranfpofing the natural Scale with the Refolution of the Compound Combination afcending.

CaNON LIV. Plate 36.

THIS canon is alfo formed by dividing the notes of every meafure. The feventh arifing from the third in the antecedent meafure, is refolved by the fecond note of the meafure in afcending to the octave; and the fifth prepares the ninth which is the firft note in the next meafure, which ninth is refolved by afcending to the third in the fecond note of the meafure; the third prepares again the feventh as abōve, and as above it is refolved, proceeding always in the fame manner, afcending in contrary motion to the bafs.

Firf N. B. The feventh is properly prepared and refolved, but the ninth would be better refolved by defcending to the octave, for the reafon mentioned at the end of the explanation of canon xii. in the firft part of this code; but in fome cafes it may be refolved in afcending, as in the canon.

Second N.B. In this canon all the firft notes of every meafure are deprived of their thirds, which are the principal harmonic founds; and that happens from the uncommon refolution by afcending, which properly are appogiatures, but fomewhat improper, as mentioned before: Therefore this canon has been put here only to thew the manner of preparing and refolving the fuperior thirds (called falfes) by afcending, when on fome occafions it becomes neceffary in compofitions in five parts.

Third $N . B$. The fame canon may be augmented to more parts in the fame manner as has been done in cannon xviii. which is in ten real parts in two chorufes in the firft part of this code, and by the addition of the parts all the compound combination will be full of the falfes alfo of change, as in the above canon xviii.

## C H A P．II．

## Of tranfpofing both the Scales，natural and artificial，by the imperfect confonant Skip of Guide in fimple Combination．

CANONS LV，LVI．Plate 36.

Stem N fimple progreflion this imperfect confonant fkip to the guide cannot go through筑 I匀象家 But in this mixt progreffion，as the bafs may have all its perfect fifths，it may pafs through all the thirteen founds of the fcale of tranfpofition．

Canon lv．has the tranfpofition of the natural fcale；and canon lvi．has the tranfpofition of the artificial fcale；both with fimple combinations．The harmony in the progreffion by the fkip to the guide，cannot be compounded with the feventh and ninth as explained in the firft part of this code，but only with the eleventh and thirteenth，or fourth and ＇fixth，the fame as in this mixed progreffion by the fame fkip；therefore when the compound combination in this progreffion is wanted，we muft have regard to the canons，and their explanation relating to the fame confonant imperfect fkip in the firf part of this code： The only difference between the fimple progreffion and the mixt by the fame fkip，is the accidental figns fharp，or flat，to be put in their proper places，the combination being the fame．

## C H A P．III．

## Of tranfpofing the two Scales，by the auxiliar perfect Skip of Third low，or Sixth high，in continual Progreffion．

CANONS LVII，LVIII，LIX，LX．Plates $37,38$.

T has been demonftrated in the firft part of this code that the continual pragreffion by the third low，or fixth high，which is the fame，is not fundamental，but derived from the perfect confonant fkip of cadence，to which it is added as auxiliar．The fame it is in the mixt progreffion，as it is apparent by obferving the true fundamental bafs exprefsly put under the firft common bafs fuppofed fundamental in all thefe four canons．

Canon lvii．is properly the tranfpofition of the natural fcale by the true fundamental bafs；but in regard to the fuppofed firft bafs feems the tranfpofition of the artificial fcale， becaufe in all meafures its firf thirds are all minor，as being the fecond third，which compofes the perfect fifth in the natural fcale ；the firf third which compofes the fame fifth being major is occupied by the fame firft fundamental bafs，confequently it has for its firft third，the fecond third，which is，as abovefaid，minor．

Canon lviii．on the contrary，feems by the firt common bafs，that paffing from the firft meafure to the fecond，it tranfpofes the fcale artificial into the natural，becaufe defcending a third low it defcends in the fecond third，which compofes the fifth，confequently it has always the firft third fharp upon its firft note，but the tranfpofition is of the artificial fcale the firft third of the two，which compofes the fifth，is minor to the combination of the
fundamental
fundamental bafs: Therefore it is manifeft that the above auxiliar fkip depends upon the confonant 1 kip of cadence, but when it is joined with it, becomes itielf fundamental, as will be feen in the following Chapter IV.

The harmony of the above two canons proceed in afcending in contrary motion to the twio bafles, becaufe the harmony to the firf bafs is of fimple combination, notwithftanding that is compound to the fundamental lower bafs.

Canon lix. is the tranfpofition of the natural fcale in the manner of the canon xvii. but with the defcending harmony. Alfo the canon lx. which is the tranfpofition of the artificial fale with defcending harmony, both thefe two canons, lix. and lx. proceed with the compound combination of feventh and ninth in defcending with the baffes.

Firft N. B. In the above two canons lix. and lx. the fifth prepares, and is changed into a feventh, which is refolved into the octave, in the common firft bafs, becaufe it defcends only by thirds; fo the ninth into which the feventh is changed by the firft fkip in the meafure of the firft common bafs; the fame ninth into the third by the combination of the fame fkip of a third low by the fame bafs; but the fame feventh in the true fundamental bafs, is refolved into the third, and the ninth into the fifth, according to the rules to be obferved in the progreffion of the confonant perfect fkip of cadence.

Second N. B. The figures are marked over and under every part: The upper figures belong to the firft bafs, and thofe under the fame part to the lower fundamental bafs; as alfo in all the canons compofed with two baffes.

## C H A P. IV.

## Article I. Of the Tranfpofition by the fame auxiliar Skip, but joined with the perfect Skip of Cadence in fimple Combination.

CANON LXI. Plate 39.

preate $N$ this progreffion the bafs defcends a minor third, in order to tranfpofe the natural
 tranfpofed a tone higher in the next meafure. The firft notes of every meafure may be confidered as principal of a new fcale, and the feeond notes principal, and, at the fame time, relative guides to the next note.

## Of the Tranfpofition of the artificial Scale with the fame Progrefion and Combination.

## CANON LXII. Plate 39.

THE firft notes in every meafure in this canon are all principal notes of the fucceffive tranfpofed fcales from the firft artificial fcale; and the fecond notes are all fundamental guides to the following principal note of the new tranfpofed fcale. The bafs fkips a minor third low, in order to afcend by the following fkip of cadence a full tone above the firft note of the antecedent meafure. By the fkip of third low the octave paffes to the major third in the fecond note of the meafure, which ferves as indicative note of the next fcale.

The fifth afcends to the octave, and the third, which is minor, is changed into a perfect fifth, and with this combination the firf fcale is tranfpofed by the fame fundamental kkip of cadence a full tone higher, containing the fame combination and progreffion, to the end of the canon.

Of the fame Tranfpofition and Progreffion, but the Ba/s Jkipping by major and minor Thirds in the natural way.

## CANON LXIII. Plate <br> 39.

THIS canon is the fame as the antecedent canon, being only different in the Akipping low by major and minor thirds; with the fkip of minor third the bafs afcends a full tone, and with the major third it afcends only a femitone by the fucceffive fkip of cadence, which is always fundamental.

## Of the Iranfpofition of the natural Scale with the fame Progreffion and Combination, but with the fundamental Guide.

## CANON LXIV. Plate 40.

THE difference betwixt this canon and canon lxi. is only in the combination of the fecond note of every meafure, which notes in canon lxi, are all relative guides, but in this canon are all fundamental guides; confequently the octave to the firft bafs note muft pafs to the third in the fecond note of the fame meafure, as indicative of the fame fundamental guide to the next tranfpofed fcale.

The Manner of tranfpofing the artificial Scale by the fame Progreffion and Combination, a Semitone bigher.

CANON LXV. Plate 40.

THE auxiliar fkip, when it defcends a major third, or afcends a minor fixth, which in combinations harmonic is the fame, tranfpofes the fcale by the fucceeding perfect fifth of cadence only a femitone higher. The firft notes in all the meafures are all principals of the new tranfpofed fcale, and the fecond notes all fundamental guides; the progreffion afcending continually by femitones.

Article II. Of the Tranfpofition of the natural Scale by the fame Progreffron, but with compound Combination.

## CANON LXVI. Plate 40.

THIS canon differs only in the combination from canon lxi. that has the perfect fimple, this the compound combination, as is clear enough in looking on the canon.

## CANONS LXVII. Plate 4 i.

THIS canon alfo is the fame as the antecedent, the difference is only in the third of the combination to the fkip of cadence, which in the above canon lxvi. it is minor, and in this canon is major, as in the canon in which is the progreffion, and its combination, is fufficiently clear.

# Of the Tran/pofition of the artificial Scale by both the above two Skips in ferven real Parts. 

CANON LXVIII. Pláte 4 I .

THE tranfpofition in this canon is of the artificial fcale, the bafs defcending a minor third from the principal firft note, paffes with compound combination into the fundamental guide of the next tranfpofed note by its 1 kip of cadence, which tranfpofed note having only the fimple combination, may be confidered as fimple principal of terminate harmony in a new tranfpofed fcale; which principal defcending into a fundamental guide for tranfpofing again the fcale, continually afcends the octave by full tones. This canon fhews at the fame time the manner of doubling the two confonant fifth and octave, which is done by adding the fimple combination to the compound ; the fimple combination afcends with the bafs, and the compound defcends in contrary motion to the bafs, as it is explained in the canon.
N. B. When the harmonic progreffion is continually done by the perfect confonant fkip of cadence, or by the imperfect confonant fkip of guide, the fimple combination proceeds always in contrary motion to the fundamental bafs; and on the contrary, the compound combination proceeds defcending together with the bafs; but the fame two fkips being joined with the auxiliar fkip of third low, or fixth high, the fimple combination goes with the bafs, and the compound on contrary motion to the fame bafs.

## Article III. Of the fame Tranfpofition and Prooreffion, but in Compound and full Combination in eight Parts.

## CANON LXIX. Plate 42.

THIS canon is the fame as the above Ixviiith, only with this difference, that all the firf notes of the meafures in the fame lxviiith canon, being principal notes with fimple combination, confequently are all of terminate harmony: But in this canon its firf notes being with compound combination becomes indeterminate harmony, and they muft be confidered as principal notes of indeterminate harmony, and the bafs flipping continually a minor third low in the fecond note of the meafure, which fecond note is the fundamental guide to the next tranfpofed fcale, to which it paffes with the fkip of cadence. The firft fcale is continually tranfpofed a full tone higher; and the bafs paffes with both its fkips through all the femitones of the divifion of the natural octave. This canon is in compound and full harmony compofed by eight real parts, in which the combination of the feventh inftead of refolving into the minor third in the next meafure, keeps firm for the full combination, in which it is changed into the eleventh, or fourth, refolving into the perfect fifth in the fecond note of the fame meafure. If the compofer will not ufe the full combination, the fourth muft be fuppreffed in refolving directly the feventh into the minor third, which in the next note mut be changed into a perfect fifth, by putting a fharp to the antecedent note ; and if he fuppreffes the ninth, he muft defcend directly to the octave, which alfo muft be altered with a fharp to give the major third indicative in the fecond note of the fame meafure to the fundamental bafs, which is the fundamental guide to the following new trafpofed fcale in the next meafure.
$N$. B. When the bafs, with its confonant fkip of cadence, defcends continually a perfect fifth, or afcends a perfect fourth, the parts which defcends with him muft proceed continually by full tones, as in the canons xlvi. xlviii. xlix. li. and lii. and when the fame confonant fkip of cadence is joined with its perfect auxiliar fkip, defcending only a minor third low, the bals afcends continually by a full tone, the parts allo which afcend with him
muft afcend continually a full tone, as it is done by fimple combination in canon lxi. and in compound combination only by thofe parts which afcends with the bafs by fifths and octaves, as in canons lxii. and lxiv. by their third parts, and in canon lxviii. by its fixth part, and in this prefent canon lxix. by the feventh part. This progreffion, by afcending or defcending continually, 1 contrary to the convenience of the voice, and to the order of the two fcales natural and artificial, which both proceed by tones and femitones: Therefore all progreffions which afcend or defcend continually a full tone, cannot be ufed in a long and fucceffive progreffion, as has been mentioned in the third $N$. B. at the beginning of this fecond part ; and in regard to the auxiliar $\mathfrak{l k i p s}$, the beft way of ufing them is defcending or afcending, by fkipping fometimes by minor thirds and fometimes by major thirds, as it is proper to the fcales in which the harmony proceeds.

## C H A P. V.

## Article I. Of tranfpofing the natural Scale by the fame auxiliar Skip of Third low, joined with the imperfect Skip to the Guide.

CANON LXX. Plate 42.

N this canon the bafs defcending a minor third low with the auxiliar fkip, and afterwards afcending by the fkip of guide, tranfpofes the fcale a major third higher; therefore cannot pafs through all the founds of the octave, to which it rifes in three fkips of guide; the octave being equally divided by three major thirds. This progreffion can only ferve for tranfpofing the fcale only one time, and very feldom for two, but never for three times fucceffively, as in the canon.

Article II. Of the Tranfpofition of botb the natural and artifcial Scales, as they bappen in tbeir Order, by the trwo joined Skips as above.

## CANON LXXI. Plate 43.

IN this canon, by the two motions of the bafs, the harmony paffes fuccefively all the founds of both the afcending and defcending fcales of tranfpofition; fucceflively tranfpofing the natural and artificial fcales a major or a minor third high, which is done by the bafs defcending continually a perfect fifth from the third note of the firft priacipal note, and afterwards afcending a perfect fifth; which third note of the principal note, when it is minor, as in the firft meafure by the fucceffive 1kip of the perfect fifth, tranfpofes the fcale in the fame minor third; and when the third of the tranfpofed fcale is major by the fame fucceffive fkip of the perfect fifth, tranfpofes the fcale a major third higher, as is apparent in the prefent canon: By this means the harmony paffes through all the twentyfive founds, divided by twenty-four femitones of both the afcending and defcending fcales of tranfpofition, proceeding always by major or minor third (as the perfect fifth of the antecedent fcale requires) combined with its perfect fifth and feventh to the Ikip of the fifth in the fecond note of the meafure, and third, fifth, and octave, to the principal firft note.

- CHAP. VI.


# Articlle I. Of Tranfpofitions by the imperfect Skip auxiliar of the Third high, joined with the confonant Skip of Cadence. 

CANON LXXII. Plate 44.


#### Abstract

\%ancid HESE imperfect auxiliar fkips of third high or fixth low, are always improper in fimple and mixt progreffion by fucceffion, as it is apparent by the canons of this chapter; in which canons the ill proceedings of the parts cannot be avoided; befides, this fame fkip in a continual progreffion cannot be fundamental, as has been explained by canon xli. therefore it can only be once ufed as fundamental; and, as has been mentioned in the third $N . B$. at the beginning of this fecond part of the code, all the canons in this fame fecond part are made to fhew the manner of tranfpofing the fcales by all the fkips of the fundamental bafs, with their proper but different combination of founds. This canon lxxii. is of fimple combination, the bafs afcending by major and minor thirds with the auxiliar fkip, and defcending and tranfpofing the fcale a major or minor third low with the perfect firth of the fkip of guide. The firft notes may be confidered as principal in their own fcales, and the fecond following notes in its fame meafure as fundamental guides to their next tranfpofed ficales.


## Article II. The Tranfpofition with compound Harmony.

## CANONS LXXIII, LXXIV. Plate 44.

THESE two canons are the fame, only the parts are difpofed in a different order, to fhew the manner of changing the places of the fame parts. Both canons are compounded with the feventh, which may feem as not prepared, being prepared by fuppofition; becaufe the part which begins giving the third to the bafs, defcends a full tone to give the feventh to the next bafs note: Therefore this fame bafs note, notwithftanding it has not been in the antecedent meafure the firft principal note, but only its third, which by the tranfpofition is changed into principal, confequently the feventh is prepared by the fame which has fubfifted in the antecedent accord; moreover, being a fundamental feventh, it may on this occafion fubfift without preparation, refolving the third into the next meafure.

## CANONS LXXV; LXXVI. Plate 45.

IN canon lxxv. the bafs afcending a major third tranfpofes the natural fcale a minor third low by the fkip of cadence, and proceeding in the fame manner it divides the fcale in four parts, becaufe the octave contains only four minor thirds, and no more. Buto the bafs afcending a minor third, and afterwards defcending a perfect fifth with the fkip of cadence, defcends always a major third; and by this manner it divides the octaye in three equal parts, as has been done in canon lxx. but in contrary progreffion.

# C H A P. VII. <br> Article I. Of the Tranfpofition of the fame Skip joined with the Skip of Guide. 

CANONS LXXVII, LXXVIII. Plate 46.

 N canon lxxvii. the bafs rifes a natural third, in order to defcend with the fkip of guide a perfect fourth low, which is the fame as afcending a perfect fifth high.

Canon Ixxviii. afcends a minor third, and afterwards defcends in like manner a perfect fourth. In this canon the third part defcends continually a full tone contrary to the convenience of the voice, and the bafs paffes through the octave by only fix intervals of a full tone, two femitones being omitted contrary to the order of the fcale ; confequently the continual progreffion, as in the canon, cannot well fubfirt.

Of transpofing the natural. Scale by the fame auxiliar Skip afcending a major Third, joined with the Same Skip of Guide.

CANON LXXIX. Plate 46.

THIS canon thews the manner of tranfpofing the natural fcale a femitone lower, and this is done by the bafs afcending a major third, and then defeending a perfect fourth, into which the antecedent fcale is tranfpofed, and by the fame progreffion the harmony paffes through all the femitones of the octave, as is clearly expreffed in the canon.


C HAP.

# C H A P. VIII. <br> Of the Tranfpofition of both the natural and artificial Scales, proceeding by all the fundamental and auxiliar Skips in compound Combination. 

CANON LXXX. Plate 46.


#### Abstract

$: 2020 \mathrm{~N}$ this laft canon the harmony, which is compound, proceeds with all the funda-

3 Imental motions in tranfpofing the two principal fcales. The firf notes form the principal fimple combination of the natural fcale; which combination is changed into compound, by defcending the third part from the octave into the indicative feventh, at the fame time of defcending the bafs into its proper octave ; which octave is alfo changed from the principal of the fcale into the fundamental guide, by which it tranfpofes the fcale into F , and by defcending by the auxiliar fkip of third low, it paffes to G and to A , from which changing the fkip of third low into the fkip of third high, it returns into the firft natural fcale of C , paffing after to G , returning again to C , which becomes the relative guide to $F$; and from $F$ defcending to $D$, relative guide of $G$, paffes to the fame $G$ as relative principal of indeterminate harmony; but by defcending in its octave, becomes the fundamental principal guide of the firf natural fcale, and the firft notes in every meafure are all principals of indeterminate harmony; and the fecond notes all guides to the next notes. All preparations and refolutions are relative to the particular motions of the bafs, explained in their particular canons. Here ends the harmonic code, in which have been explained all the fundamental laws and rules belonging to the compofition of mufic. Now we fhall pafs on to examine the relation and application of the fame fundamental laws and rules to the figurate harmony, or common compofition of mufic, in the following book.


END of Book II.




# D ELL' <br> <br> ARTE ARMONICA: 

 <br> <br> ARTE ARMONICA:}

O R,

## A Treatise of the Composition of MUSIC.

## B O OK III.

Containing the Figurate Harmony ; its Difference from the Fundamental ; and the diverfe Motions of the Bafs, and Parts, with the Diminutions of the fundamental Notes; alfo its different Compofitions and Divifions; with their particular Laws and Rules, over and above the Harmonic Laws.

## C H A P. I.

## Article I. Of the Figured Harmony.



IG URED harmony is the ufual and common mufic, which may be compofed in two, three, four, to fixteen or more parts or voices, with or without inftruments. It is called figured mufic by muficians, becaufe different figures are made ufe of, with variety to time and meafure at pleafure; confequently it differs from the fundamental harmony, not only in the diverfity of figures and time, but alfo in the combination of founds, which becomes inverted by the arbitrary motions of the bafs, and of the parts.

## Articie. II. Of the different Situation of the Bafs in figured Mufic, by which the fundamental Combinations are inverted.

F Undamental harmony is a compofition only harmonic, without any fort of melody, having the notes all equal, and the motions of the bafs and parts all limited, otherways it would be impoffible to fhew, in a proper order, the original rules of combination and
progreflion of founds. But the figured harmony being almoft always joined with fome particular melody, and as the melody arifes directly from nature, being the product of the natural genius of the compofer, it cannot be limited to any particular movements, but only to thofe which arife from its being joined by and proceeding with the harmony; and as the melody is the principal object in figured mufic, in which it may be introduced into any one of the parts, and bafs, therefore the parts and bafs muft follow the melody according to its different notes, movement, and time; confequentiy the bafs, and the parts, by following or repeating the fubject of the melody, cannot always proceed in a fundamental manner ; and becaufe the harmonic combinations are adapted and calculated to the divers diftances, or, as commonly called, intervals, betwixt the parts and the bafs, when the bafs is not in the fundamental place, the combination of founds becomes lefs or more inverted, as the fame bafs is far or near its fundamental place, as may diftinctly be feen in the examples $1,2,3,4$, and 5 . plate 47 .

The firf example is of fimple fundamental combination: It is divided into three parts; the firft divifion hews the fundamental fimple combination to the principal note of the natural fcale C , occupied by the bafs; the upper parts compofing the fame fimple accord of $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, and 8 th, and the octaves of the 3 d and 5 th. The fecond divifion fhews the firft inverfion of the fame fimple accord, which happens when the bafs occupies the third note of the fimple fundamental accord, which is inverted in the 3 d , 6 th, and 8 th; the 3 d of this inverted combination arifes from the fundamental 5 th, the 6 th from the fundamental octave, and the 8 th is the 8 th of the fundamental 3 d, occupied by the bafs. In the third divifion, the bafs being in the place of the fundamental fifth note, the combination fundamental is inverted, and becomes the accord of $4 \mathrm{th}, 6 \mathrm{th}$, and 8 th .
$N$. B. This fimple fundamental combination has no more inverfion than the two above-mentioned.

The $2 \mathrm{~d}, 3 \mathrm{~d}$, and 4 th examples are of compound combination to the note G , which is the fundamental guide to the principal note of the natural fcale.

The fecond example is divided into four parts; the firft divifion has the fundamental accord 3d, 5 th,' 7 th, and 8th. In the fecond divifion the bafs being in the 3 d of the fundamental accord, it becomes inverted into the $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, and 6 th . In the third divifion the bafs is placed in the fundamental fifth, and the combination or accord is inverted into the 3d, 4 th, and 6th. In the laft divifion, the bafs being in the fundamental feventh, the fundamental accord is inverted and changed into the 2 d , 4 th, and 6 th.

The third example fhews the compound combination of the $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, 7 th, and 9 th, without the octave, and is divided into five parts. By the firft divifion is defcribed the fundamental compound combination of the $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, 7 th, and 9 th. In the fecond divifion, the bafs being in the third note of the fundamental combination, this fame combination is inverted into the $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, and 7 th; the 3 d of this inverted accord is the 5 th in the fundamental, and the 5 th and 7 th are the 7 th and 9 th of the fame fundamental accord. The fundamental combination is inverted in the third divifion into the combination of the $3^{\mathrm{d}}, 5$ th, and 6 th, the bafs being in the fundamental 5 th. In the fourth divifion the bafs is in the fundamental 7 th, and the inverfion is $3 \mathrm{~d}, 4 \mathrm{th}$, and 6 th. The fifth divifion being the bafs in the fundamental ninth, the inverfion becomes $2 \mathrm{~d}, 4$ th, and 6 th.

The fourth' example is compounded with the addition of the octave to the 7 th and 9 th, and is alfo divided into five parts. The firft divifion contains the fundamental combination of $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, 7 th, 8 th, and 9 th; in the fecond divifion, the bafs being in the fundamental third, the inverfion is 3 d , 5 th, 6 th, and 7 th: The third divifion has the bais in the fundamental fifth note, and the inverfion becomes $3^{\mathrm{d}}, 4^{\text {th }}, 5^{\text {th }}$, and 6 th. In the fourth divifion, the bafs being in the fundamental 7 th, the fundamental combination is
inverted into the $2 \mathrm{~d}, 3 \mathrm{~d}, 4$ th, and 6th; and in the laft divifion, the bafs being in the ninth fundamental, the inverfion is $2 \mathrm{~d}, 4$ th, 6 th, and 7 th. Thefe four examples, as they are explained, fhew all the general inverfion of the fundamental fimple and compound combination of founds in the natural fcale, which may ferve alfo as examples for all the other fcales.

The fifth example is in full combination, as being compofed by the eight original founds difpofed by thirds, which may be infinitely protracted; confequently the inverfion cannot always be apparent, becaufe in whatfoever note of the fundamental true accord the bafs is, it has a like accord difpofed in the fame order by fucceffive thirds, as is to be feen in example v. plate 47. Therefore it may appear difficult to diftinguih the fundamental true bafs from the common, both having the fame accord: But in obferving the movement and fituation of the bafs, is eafily known the true fundamental. The fundamental bafs cannot proceed by conjoint degree, but by its confonant and auxiliar fkips; confequently when it moves by conjoint degree, only one of the two joined notes can be fundamental. For fuppofing the bafs in the note C paffing into the nearer note D , if, C is fundamental, D cannot be fundamental, but only one of the notes belonging to the fimple fundamental accord of its two confonant or two auxiliar fkips. In the confonant fimple accord of C, as principal, it cannot fubfift, nor in its two auxiliar 1kips of 3 d low and high: The fkip of 3 d low from C is A, and the fkip of 3 d high is E, to which D cannot be 3 d , 5 th, or 8 th ; confequently it is apparent, that it can only belong to the other confonant (kip of 5 th high or 4 th low, which is Gguide to the above principal C , and D is the fifth note of the fame guide G . But if D is the fundamental note, C can only be the third note of A ; which A is the relative guide to $D$, and by the order of the antecedent and following progreflion of the fame bafs notes, is known which of the two joined notes is the true fundamental. The fame muft be obferved in regard to the two wisliar fkips of third high or low. When the bafs proceeds by thirds, only two can be fundamental ; for example, the bafs defcending from C to $A$, and fucceffively from $A$ to $F$, both $C$ and $A$ may be fundamental notes; $C$ as principal, defcending in A by its defcending auxiliar kip, which may be the relative guide to the note D ; in this cafe the following note F , into which the bafs defcends from A , as above, can only be the third of the fimple combination belonging to the fame D its principal relative note ; and being fundamental $C$ and $F$, the note $A$ can only be the third to the note F as principal, and C as relative, or fundamental Guide. The fame happens with the other auxiliar fkip , as has been demonftrated by the canons of the harmonic code relating to the fame two auxiliar fkips, where has been fhewn, that the bafs, as fundamental, can only proceed with one fkip of third, but following another fkip of third, muft be joined by one of the two confonant fkips, which properly are only the two true principal Ikips fundamental.
$N . B$. The inverfion of the eleventh note of the fundamental accord has been omitted in this article, but it will be explained in the following fifth article.

## Article III. Of the Inverfions by the Bafs Syncopes.

IT has been mentioned in the firft article of this prefent book, that the common bafs is: not always in the fundamental place, but very often in the place of one or another of the fuperior parts; and that happens when the bafs has occafion to imitate or contraft fome propoted melody, or to fill the harmony, or fome other purpofes as may ferve the genius of the compofer; which is the caufe that the fundamental notes are changed, many in fyncopes, many in fimple or double, but different notes, and many other in diminifhed notes. Syncopes, which is the fubject matter of this article, is fo called when two notes are tied together as if they were only one, as is to be feen in example vi. plate 48. This example is divided into two parts, the firft part contains in general the fecond part, but particularly the two extreme ftaffs, namely the upper extreme ftaff, keeping in the notes which gives the fimple combination to the fundamental bafs in the low extreme ftaff; and alfo the
fame notes ferve to the diverfe combinations with the fix baffes contained in the fecond divifion fubdivided in three parts, every one having two bafics proceeding one after another, the firft fubdivifion containing the baffes I . and 2. gives to the bafs fundamental, alternatively, the fifth and octave, doubling the fame notes of the fuperior notes. In the fecond divifion both baffes gives alternatively the ninth, and the two laft in the third fub-divifion the feventh. The two baffes in the firft fub-divifion fkip from the firft note one octave higher for paffing into the fifth: The other two, in the fecond fub-divifion, fkip a fifth higher, by which is prepared the ninth; and the other two, in the laft fub-divifion, arife a third high, preparing the feventh to the fundamental bafs; and altogether the fix baffes, with the three parts in the upper extreme, make the fimple combination of $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, and 8 th, all doubled and joined with the compound combination of the 7 th and 9 th, to every note of the fundamental bafs. The two firf baffes I. 2. are the fame as the two parts upon the bafs in the firft canon of the code, doubling the fifths and octaves of the fuperior parts, as is done in canon iii. The other two baffes 3 . and 4. are the fame as the two parts in canon vi. giving the ninth to the fundamental bais, prepared by the fifth and refolved into the fifth; and the two laft bafles, 5 . and 6 . are the fame as the parts in canon iv. giving the feventh to the fame fundamental bafs; which feventh is prepared by the third, and refolved into the third, as it is in canon iv. But in regard to every bafs feparately, in the three divifions, the fuperior fimple combination of the three parts in the firft ftaff, become all inverted in different manners, namely in the firf divifion the inverfion to the two baffes 1.2. is the 4 th and 6th refolving into the 3 d and 5 th: So the baffes in the fecond fubdivifion, when they have changed alternatively the firft combination into the 4 th and 6th, by the skip of guides, this accord is changed by the next fyncope into the 2 d , 4 th and 7 th. The fame in regard to the two baffes 5 . and 6 . in the third divifion, which baffes afcending a third ene after the other, change their firft combination of 3 d and 6 th , which is inverted in the following meafure $2 \mathrm{~d}, 4$ th, and 6 th, and it is refolved again into the 3 d and 6 th. All thefe different inverfions joined together with the upper three parts, and the fix baffes, make the fundarnental compound combination of $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, 7 th, and 9 th, to every note of the fundamental bafs, as it is apparent in the above example vi. plate 48 . which thews all the inverfions by fyncopes of the compound harmony belonging to the perfect confonant skip of cadence of indeterminate harmony.
$N$. B. It muft be obferved, that in a compofition where the bafs fyncope is a falfe, the fame falfe cannot fubfift in the other parts, without proceeding by octaves, which is improper, and not truly harmonic: And when there are two parts which proceed, one by the 7 th and the other by the 9 th, over the fundamental bafs, as it happens in compofitions of eight or more real parts, the fuperior parts muft proceed with only the fimple combination, as in the above example. But when the eight parts are all doubled and tripled, the 7 th and gth may fubfift alfo in the fuperior parts, provided the refolution be done on the contrary motion, namely, one afcending the other defcending; or elfe by change, as has been fhewn by their refpective canons in the firft part of the code.

## Article IV. Of the varied and diminibed Bafs Notes.

THE fimple doubled varied notes are expreffed in example vii. plate 49, which fhews the inverfion of the fundamental notes in fimple combination, and example viii. in the fame plate, fhews the inverfion of the compound accord by the 7 th and 9 th. The firf example is compofed by the fimple combination of the three fuperior parts at the top, to the fundamental bafs at the bottom of the example, and the four inclofed baffes made the inverfion. The other example viii. which alfo has the fimple combination betwixt the upper parts and the fundamental, but the four inclofed baffes afcending one third, and after defcending gradually, make the compound combination of the 7 th and 9 th to the fundamental, inverting in that manner the fimple combination, as is clearly fhewn by the figures at every one of the fame four baffes.

The following plate 50 , has the example ix. which is divided into four parts. The firlt part has five ftaffs; in the firft ftaff is the fundamental bafs, and the more common $\mathrm{d}_{1}$ vifions and diminutions of the fundamental notes are in the following four baffes, namely in the firft common bafs the fundamental notes are diminifhed every one into four, proceeding from the firt note to the third, and returning to the firf. The fecond common bafs diminifhes the above four notes of the firft common bafs. The third common bafs has its diminifhed notes by skips, and the laft bafs has the diminifhed notes of the fame third bafs. The fecond divifion contains a continual progreflion defcending by thirds, fhewing that the fame progreflion is fubordinate to the perfect confonant fkip of cadence, as has been demonftrated in the canons of the auxiliar fkip of third low; and the fame progreffion may ferve for augmenting two parts more to the fix parts, with which is formed the third canon, making eight real parts in fimple combination, but in figured harmony.

The third part or divifion, contains the diminutions of the fundamental notes diffributed in four different common baffes; the firf afcending a third, and the fecond a fifth, defcending together by fixths gradually to the notes of every following meafure: The third and fourth bafies proceed in the fame manner, but beginning a meafure after the firft two. The fourth divifion contains two baffes, which proceed one after the other, by the fk ip of an octave falling into the fifth of the principal in the middle of the fame meafure, and paffing to the third of the principal note in the following meafure, as is clearly expreffed in the fame example. The inverfions of all the common baffes are expreffed by the figures marked to every one, and all their diminifhed notes come from the fundamental notes in the firft ftaff, which needs no further explanation.
$N$. B. It muft be obferved, that when a common bafs paffes particularly in accented time, with its varied and diminifhed notes, by the fifth of the fundamental combination, which fifth has its proper fundamental combination when it is the guide, but in the diminutions of the principal notes, being confidered only as a fimple fifth of the fame principal note, as in the above example ix. it is in the baffes 4 , and 5 , of the firt divifion, in which they defcend a fourth from $C$ to $G$, which $G$ may be fuppofed the fundamental guide, but in the fame diminution it is only a fimple fifth belonging to the principal note C , and not its Guide ; therefore the compofer is obliged to put the proper figures of 4 , and 6 , which is the inverfion of the principal note by the fimple fifth, for avoiding miftakes in the accompanyment in the organ or harpficord; as has been done in the fame example in the firft meafure of the above baffes, and in the following meafure by a line over the fame meafure, which fignifies the continuation of the firft accord.

Second N.B. In the above four examples, 6, 7, 8, and 9, all the baffes are expreffed, two by two, which two baffes may be joined into one; the fame difpofition in two baffes being only done for hewing the manner of dividing one bafs into two, when it is wanted, as in compofitions in eight or more parts; the fame manner may be applied to the parts, and particularly, as it is done by the four baffes in the third divifion of example ix. plate 50. but in the firf divifion of the fame example, is only expreffed the diminutions and fubdiminutions of the fame diminutions. Thefe diminutions and fubdiminutions of the prin-cipal notes arifing properly from the melody, which being arbitrary to every one, may be produced in diverfe and infinite manners, confequently may be alfo done in diverfe and almoft infinite manners at the pleafure and according to the genius of the compofer.

Third N.B. The refulution of the ninth, which is refolved into the fifth of the fundamental note, as has been thewn in its proper canons, when it is inverted by the common bafs, may feem improperly and falfely refolved, becaufe the bats forming the falfe major fecond with the indicative afcending third, which afcending a tone, and the bafs defcending a tone in the following meature, the fecond is refolved into a fourth, which may be confidered as falfe, or difcord; but the fame fourth is the octave of the principal note, and the bafs in defeending a tone paffes into the guide of the fame principal note; which two
notes may fubfift together, as immoveable fundamental baffes of its own fcalé : Moreover, the fame note of the guide, in which is refolved the bafs, has fubfifted in the preceeding combination in the fuperior part, as feventh to the fame common bafs, and as octave to the fundamental bafs, refolving the feventh in defcending to the fame note, which is the octave betwixt the upper part and the common bafs, giving both together the fifth to the fundamental bafs; confequently the bafs refolves the fecond with the upper part, which gives the octave to the fundamental into the fourth, this being the fifth fundamental. This manner of refolving the ninth, when it is occupied by the common bals, is not commonly underftood or known by many compofers, which ordinarily refolves the fuperfluous fecond or ninth into the fundamental bafs by afcending a femitone together with the parts, or defcending into the fame fundamental note, which is a fundamental guide, before the parts and the fundamental bafs moves, which refolution makes the accord fundamental in the fame common bafs; but the beft way is the refolution, as it has been done in the canons of the harmonic code; notwithftanding the other two common manners of refolving the fame ninth may alfo fubfift, being the fame ninth or fecond inverted, refolved in afcending with the parts a femitone or a tone, becomes a deceptive cadence, and refolving in defcending a tone before the moving of the parts, by this means paffes into the guide of the next note, and in both manners the refolution is made by a third; therefore it is arbitrary to the compofers.

Fourth N. B. In this article is only explained the reverfinn of the fimple and compound combination by the common bafs, with the 1kip of cadence, and the other ikip to the guide is omitted, becaufe when the reverfion of the perfect confonant fkip of cadence is known, the order of the reverfion of the other fundamental and auxiliar fkips will be underfood; only it muft be obferved, that the imperfect confonant lkip to the guide has no proper reverfions, only by the fourth and fixth, and this reverfion cannot be done naturally from the bafs, without proceeding by falfes of anticipations, which may be only fupported once or in the perfect cadences. For that which regards the diminutions of the fundamental notes, is the fame, as it has been explained alfo for dividing the baffes; only it muft be obferved in the fkip of cadence, the fecond bafs, or part, repeats the fubject into the fourth high, or fifth low; but in the fkip to the guide, the repetition muft be done by the fifth high or fourth low; alfo in the divifion of the parts, or baffes proceeding by the auxiliar fkips, the repetition muft be by the third high, or low, as it is the auxiliar fkip, but this rule may be changed in the tranfpofition of the fcale by imitations.

## Article V. Of Equivocal Combinations.

THESE equivocal combinations muft be diftinguifhed into two different forts or manners. In one manner the founds are equivocal, it not being poffible to know where, or in what fcale, the fame combination may pafs by only hearing it ; but when the founds are properly denominated in their notes, and figured under the bafs note, immediately is known the next combination. The other fort of equivocal combinations are equivocal not only in their founds, but alfo in their proper denomination. The above firft fort will be explained by two following articles vi. and vii. Now in this article we thall explain the fecond fort of thefe equivocal combinations, which are derived from the fyncopes of the common bafs, by which are tied two, three, or more notes. Thefe two, three, or more notes, may be one of the two principal fable and immoveable fundamental baffes, both of which have the right of fupporting all combinations of the fimple harmonic progreffion, which may be made by the original founds of its own fcale, without moving from their ftable places, as mentioned in the firft article of the fourth chapter, book the firft : Confequently the different combinations of the fuperior parts are not confidered as inverted, but as proceeding naturally in their own fcale, fucceffively refolving their combination by their own motions, as it is expreffed in example $x$. plate 5 I . which example is divided by three bars, making three meafures; in the firft meafure is defcribed the fimple combination
to the fundamental bafs $C$; in the fecond meafure, the parts moving, change the fimple combination into the compound accord $2 \mathrm{~d}, 4^{\text {th }}, 5$ th, and 7 th, which properly belong to G as fundamental guide in the fcale of C , as 3 d , 5 th, and 7 th; in the following meafure, the parts moving again, refolve the falfe accord done to the bafs in the antecedent meafure, reftoring the firft fimple combination to the bafs, which has continued firm in the principal note C. The following example xi. in the fame plate, is alfo divided by three bars or meafures; in the firft and fecond meafure is the fame combination as in the firft example $x$. but in the third meafure, the parts keeping firm the combination of the fundamental guide $G$ made in the antecedent meafure, the bafs refolves the falfe accord of the fecond meafure, defcending one note, which is the third found to the combination of the guide G . In the firft of thefe two examples the bafs being always firm in the principal note C , and the parts moving, makes the falfe combination in the fecond meafure; which falfe or difcord is refolved in the third meafure by the fame parts; the bafs muft be confidered as ftable and immoveable foundation of all the original founds of its octave or its own fcale. In the other example xi. of the fame plate 51 , the bafs refolving in the third meafure the falfe combination of the antecedent meafure, fhews that it is a common bafs, becaufe being fundamental in the firft meafure, and keeping firm the fame note in the fecond meafure, in which the parts proceed from the firft combination of the principal to that of the guide, and after in the third meafure the parts keeping firm, and the bafs refolving the falfe combination. of the fecond meafure in defcending as above-faid, fhews that the fame bafs that has made the difcord, or falfe combination in keeping firm in the fecond meafure, and not the parts in moving, to which movement the bafs fhould have followed lkipping to the guide; but in keeping firm the note in the fecond meafure, it is changed into the eleventh note, which is the fifth third in the harmonic fyftem belonging to the full combination of the guide, and in this manner makes the inverfion in the fame eleventh note, which becomes a fecond below the fundamental fifth note D , and a fourth below the fundamental indicative defcending 7 th F , alfo a fifth with the octave of the fundamental guide G , and a 7 th major with the indicative fundamental afcending third; all which is refolved by the fame bafs, as common bafs defcending into the note $B$, namely the fecond into the third, the 4 th and 5 th into the falfe 5 th and 6 th, and the major 7 th into the octave; which all together, the bafs with the parts, make the fundamental combination of the $3 \mathrm{~d}, 5$ th, 7 th, and 9 th, to the fundamental bafs $G$ not expreffed.

This is the explanation of the eleventh note of the guide mentioned but not explained in the $N . B$. at the end of article ii. of the fame chapter.

By the two above examples may be eafily known and diftinguifhed the fundamental bafs from the common bafs, which confifts only in obferving the refolutions of the falfes, if they are done by the bafs, or by the parts; it being a general rule, that the refolution of all falfes, or difcords, muft be done by the fame parts which make the fame falfes; which general rule has fome exceptions, as has been feen in the canons of the harmonic code.

## Article VI. Of fome particular Inverfons arifing from the artificial Scale.

IN the fixth chapter and fourth article of the firft book, has been demonftrated, that the artificial fcale is divided into two different fcales, one afcending, the other defcending. In afcending the 6th and 7 th founds are neceffarily major, or fharp; but in defcending are both minor, or flat. This is the caufe that the inverfion of the compound combination with the 7 th and 9 th to the fundamental guide, becomes fomewhat diverfe from the like inverfion of the fame combination in the natural fcale. The figures which reprefent the above falfe combination, are the fame in both fcales natural and artificial, but the founds are not the fame; and that is alfo the caufe that thefe inverfions are called equivocal accords, or combinations, as will be explained in the next article. When the common bafs in the natural.fcale occupies the indicative 3 d of the fundamental guide, the inverfion becomes 3 d , $5^{\text {th }}$, and 7 th (as has been fhewn) the fame is in the artificial fcale; but
the 7 th derived from the defcending indicative minor 9 th of the fundamental guide, muft be marked flat. When the fame bafs is in the fifth note of the fundamental guide, the inverfion is 3 d , 5 th, and 6 th, in the natural fcale, the fame as in the artificial fcale, but the fifth of the common bafs derived from the minor or flat 9th, muft be diminifhed a femitone, and figured as a falfe 5 th ; the fame alfo when it occupies the place of the 7 th of the fundamental guide, its 3 d being the fame flat 9 th, confequently muft be flat; and the accord is the fame in the natural fcale, namely 3 d , 4 th, and 6 th, but the 3 d in the natural fcale is naturally major, derived from the 9 th, which is major, and the 4 th, derived from the indicative harp 3d, muft be marked fharp: The interval betwixt the above 3 d flat and 4 th harp in the combination of the artificial fcale, is compounded of one fecond; but exceeding a femitone the major natural fecond; confequently the found is the fame as the flat third, being compofed of the fame interval, notwithftanding it is confidered as a fecond, becaufe the mark, or fign of fharp, or flat, alters only the founds, but not the names of the founds, as has been before-mentioned. It is the fame when the common bafs occupies the fundamental indicative flat 9 th, the inverfion is $2 \mathrm{~d}, 4$ th, 6 th, and 7 th ; the interval betwixt every one of thefe founds is of flat 3 d , but it is not fo in the natural fcale, and this difference derives becaufe the natural notes and figures in the natural fcale reprefent the natural founds with their proper names; but in the artificial fcale the figures and notes reprefent the names of the fame notes, but not their proper founds. In the natural fcale the found named $A$ is diftant from the following note $B$ the interval of a tone, which is the fame as two femitones; but in the artificial fcale (fuppofing the fcale of 3 d flat) the fame A being flat in the fundamental combination of the guide $G$, as its defcending indicative 9 th, becomes diftant three femitones from the note $B$ natural, which muft be major or fharp, as indicative afcending $3^{d}$ of the guide $G$; and the above interval, from $A$ flat to B natural, being three femitones, confequently the found correfponds to the flat third, not to the fecond, as before told; but $B$ being the fucceffive fecond name of $A$, is called a fecond; and when the fame $A$ flat ferves as 7 th to $B$ natural, this 7 th being compofed by nine remitones, which properly is the interval of a major 6th, but being the fame A flat, the feventh name from $B$, is named and marked as a 7 th, which is diftinguifhed by the the furname of 7 th diminifhed. This is the difference of the combination of founds between the natural and artificial fcale.

## Article VII. Of the different Ufes arimg from the Inverfoon of the fundamental Accord of Guide in the artificial Scale.

FR OM the explanation of the above article it is manifert that the compound combination with the major $3^{d}$ to the fundamental bafs note, joined to the 5 th, 7 th, and flat 9 th, in the artificial fcale, when the fundamental bafs note is abftracted, the following four notes, namely the 3 d , 5 th, 7 th, and 9 th, make a combination of four fucceffive flat thirds, forming an octave, divided into four equal parts, every one in the fame degree of harmony with the other; confequently all together joined, in whatfoever manner they may be inverted, are perfectly harmonic, therefore they need no preparation nor refolution; and from one of the faid combinations may be paffed to another like combination, compofed by four different flat thirds, without refolving the antecedent combination: But thefe paffages without refolution can only fubfift for two times, or at moft for three, becaufe the octave being divided by twelve femitones, by which the octave becomes compofed of thirteen founds, and the above combination confifting in five founds forming four intervals, each divided by three femitones, every one of which is a fourth part of the faid twelve intervals, by which the octave is divided, as above-faid ; confequently when from the accord of the firft femitone is tranfofed the fame accord to the fecond femitone, and after to the third femitone, proceeding to the other femitone, the progreffion of the fourth femitone becomes the fame, as has been done by the firft femitone and alfo of the others refpectively one to another : Moreover, being the fame accord of indeterminate combination and progreffion, it muft at laft be refolved into one of the two confonant kkips fifth low or fifth high, otherwife the fenfation
fenfation will be tired in prolonging the expected conclufion of the harmony promifed by the firft of the above accords. Thefe accords or combinations derives from three femitones whatfoever may be, but following one another, as in example xii. plate 51. Every note of the above combinations may be confidered as fundamental indicative afcending 3 d, leading in their next fenitone, which is the principal note of the following fcale, confequently every one muft have their proper fundamental bafs note a fharp 3 d below as guide to the fucceeding fcale, as may be feen in example xiii. of the fame plate 5 I , in which example is fuppofed the fecond femitone C harp, defcribed in example xii. the combination of which is C fharp, E natural, G natural, B flat, and C fharp, which accord forms a combination of four fucceffive flat thirds. The common bafs in the fame example is fuppofed always in the indicative afcending 3 d , in every one of the four divifions, by which it is evident, that fuppofe C fharp the indicative afcending third leading into the next femitone D , the fundarnental guide muft be the note A diftant a major third from C fharp, paffing together to D the principal note of the indicative fcale. If it is fuppofed that the note E of the fame combination be the indicative afcending note leading in $F 3 d$ flat, $C$ natural muft be its fundamental guide, but C harp becoming the 9 th of the fundamental combination, muft be changed into D flat, which is the fame found as C fharp, becaufe this name of C fharp cannot fubfirt in the fcale of F 3 d flat. If G natural in the fame accord is confidered as being the afcending indicative 3 d , leading in A flat with its 3 d flat, the fundamental note of its guide muft be $E$ flat its indicative 3 d to the above note G natural, its fifth $\mathrm{B}, \mathrm{D}$ flat is 7 th, and F flat its indicative defcending 9 th, which D flat and F flat are the fame founds as $C$ fharp and $E$ natural. If at laft it is fuppofed that the note $B$ flat of the fame accord, C harp, E natural, G natural, and B flat, be the indicative afcending $3^{\text {d leading in } C \text { flat, the fundamental guide muft be } G \text { flat ; but for the convenience of the }}$ eafier fcale, the name of B flat muft be changed into A fharp, and C flat into B natural, being the fame founds; confequently the fundamental guide $G$ muft alfo be changed into F harp; A fharp being its indicative note leading in B natural, fubfifting in the reft of the combination, namely $C$ hharp as fifth to the guide F fharp, and E, G, both natural, as 7 th and 9 th flat to the fame guide F harp, as is clearly defcribed in the above example xii. from which it is apparent, that the combination compofed by four fucceffive flat 3 ds , may pafs into four different principal, but artificial fcales: Moreover, if thefe four artificial fcales are changed into natural, namely, inftead of giving to them the flat third, is given the major 3 d, the fame four fcales are changed from being principal of their own fcale into guides to four other artificial fcales, as it is expreffed in example xiv. plate 52 . the reafon is, that paffing from the firft bafs note C fharp of the fame accord into the note D , this fame $D$ having its $3^{d}$ fharp, cannot be a principal note of its own fcale, becaufe the feventh to the antecedent note C fharp, being B flat, it cannot fubfift in the fcale of D 3 d fharp, where B muft be natural ; confequently the fame D muft only be confidered as fundamental guide paffing into $G$ flat 3 d, which is the fame as the above $B$ flat in the firft combination, as it clearly appears in the above example xiv.

Firft N.B. The firft baffes in thefe two examples are both common, and not fundamental, being in the indicative afcending 3 d of the fundamental accord, but they may fubfift alfo in every one of the notes of the above fame combination, namely in the 5 th, 7 th, and 9 th, coniequently the combinations and the refolutions become inverted, and all different one from another. For example, if the common bafs is in the fifth note of the fundamental accord, which is E natural in the firft combination of both the examples, the firft accord being the bafs in the note, $C$ charp is 3 d , 5 th, and 7 th, flat; the bafs in the fifth $E$ being the firt combination, is inverted into 3 d , 5 th flat, and 6 th fharp; and the refolution is not. afcending, but in defcending one note to the principal ; and the bafs being in the note G , whinch is the 7 th flat of the fundamental accord, the inverfion is 3 d flat, 4 th fharp, and 6th natural, and the refolution defcends a tone in the third note of the fcale. And the bafs, when it is in the laft note of the combination which refers to the 9 th of the fundamentai accord, the inverfion is a fecond extreme fharp 4th and 6th natural, in the refolution of which the common bafs defcending a note, the accord becomes the 4 th and 5 th, or the

4th and 6th, which feems as a falfe refolution, but is the propereft and original refolution, as has been explained in the third note of the fourth article of this chapter. The above explained combination derived from three femitones following each other, as in example xii. plate 5 I. may be called equivocals, becaufe they may pafs into different fcales, without being known, by hearing the founds, where their refolution will be; but when they are properly known and figured, the fucceeding fcale is prefently known.

Second N.B. The above-faid combinations, refolutions, and arbitrary paffages in different fcales, Shew evidently the impoffibility of that fo much celebrated divifion of the tone and femitone fubfifting in major and minor ; which divifion never can have fubfifted in practice; but if it has fubfifted, muft be only in the firft time of the Greeks, where was ufed the lira of the four ftrings. Notwithftanding the above diftinction of the tone and femitone into major and minor, as it is now fuppofed true, certain, and unqueftionable, not only by fo many writers in mufic, which following the opinion of Ptolomy, and after of Boetius, have thewn their lkill in calculating the reafons of the fuppofed intervals betwixt thefe different tones and femitones, to find out a juft manner of tranfpofing the Greek diatonic fcale, knowing nothing, or very little, in the practice of the harmonic art; but alfo by almoft all the prefent practitioners and compofers in mufic, fhewing at the fame time that they know nothing of the true harmonic theory, which muft be formed and calculated, not by the mathematic rules, which have nothing to do with the human fenfation, but by practice; the faculty of forming perfectly the fame fcale has been provided according to the general conftitution of mankind, by the fame nature, and confirmed by rules of practice derived from phyfic, namely for the general conftitution of the common human hearing.

## Article VIII. Of fome irregular Combinations, which bappen in the artificial Scale.

IN the firft note at the end of the fecond article in the third chapter of the firft book; has been mentioned, that befides the intervals of the two feconds major and minor, the two fifths perfect and falfe, the two fixths and fevenths major and minor, alfo of the perfect octave ; there is a fecond, which is compofed of three femitones, commonly called the fuperfluous or extreme fharp fecond, being equal to a flat third, one 5 th, and one 6 th, called fuperfluous, the 5 th formed with a femitone more than the perfect fifth, alfo the fuperfluous 6 th a femitone more than the major 6 th, the 5 th fuperfluous being equal to the minor 6 th, and the fuperfluous 6 th to the minor 7 th. Alfo a 7 th, called diminifhed, compofed of nine femitones, being equal to the major 6th, and an octave, alfo called fuperfluous, containing a femitone more than the perfect octave, being equal to the minor 9th. The combinations with every one of thefe above intervals only happen in the combinations of the founds of the artificial fcale, becaufe it has two fcales, one afcending and the other defcending, as mentioned and explained in the firf book; and that happens when two founds of thefe different fcales are joined in one combination, namely, one in the common bafs, the other in the fuperior parts. The extreme fharp 2 d derives by being joined to the flat 9 th of the fundamental guide, with the tenth note, which is the octave higher of the fharp indicative third ; for example, the gth in the fundamental combination of the guide of the artificial fcale C 3 d flat, is A flat, and the octave of the indicative 3 d is $B$ naturally tharp; from $A$ flat to $B$ natural is one interval of three femitones, which is the fame as the interval of a minor, or flat 3 d ; but becaufe the name of the found B is the fecond after A , it is called a fecond, as mentioned before. The fame of the fuperfluous fifth. For example, fuppofing the artificial A natural, its feventh note which is $G$, is naturally minor in defcending from the octave of the principal $A$; but in afcending from the principal $A$ to its octave the fame $G$ muft be fharp, forming a major 7 th to the fame principal, and confequently altered with one more femitone, as has been explained in its proper place; and when it happens that the fame note $G$ fharp is joined with the bafs note $\bar{C}$, which is the minor 3 d of the principal, this combination makes the fuperfluous
fuperfluous fifth; on the contrary, G being natural in defcending, gives the perfet fifth to the fame bafs C , as in the example xv . plate 52 . the interval of the fuperfluous fifth is the fame as that of the minor 6 th.

The fuperfluous 6 th happens (fuppofing the fame above fcale A natural) when the common bafs defcends gradually from A to $G$ natural, and fucceffively from $G$ to $F$ alfo natural, G being the feventh note and F the fixth of the principal note in the fcale, as may be feen in the above example xv. in which the fecond part in the laft meafure but one having continued the antecedent meafure in E , its fifth note of the fimple accord, giving fucceflively to the common bafs the accord of 5 th, 9 th, and 7 th, at laft it refolves the note E in D fharp, which is computed a major 6 th to the bafs note F natural, but the juft interval betwixt thefe two founds $D$ fharp and $F$ natural, is a minor 7 th, which interval refpectively to the name is called fixth with the furname of fuperfluous; and the fame D fharp being not compofed in either of the two fcales afcending or defcending, confequently the falife accord becomes of falfe relation; notwithftanding that the ear is not offended, for the reafon of defcending the common bals from the octave of the principal note A, in which is combined with the fimple accord, paffes gradually to F 3 d below, which in the defcending fcale mutt be natural, and fill remaining in the fame F which belongs to the fame artificial defcending fcale A with the reft of its accord, it keeps firm in the fenfation the remembrance of the fame fcale; and the bafs being in the bafis of the above combination covers partly the harfh found of the fuperfluous fixth, in a manner, that by following the refolution, when all the parts are properly combined with the fame fuperfluous fixth, it becomes extremely pleafant, for the fame fuperfluous fixth afcending to the octave of the fundamental guide of the fcale, and the bafs defcending into the fame fundamental guide, both proceeding by femitones, which is the fhorter way, always ufed by nature, and confequently the more agreeable. See the above example xv. plate 52 . As to the fuperfluous octave, it happens when the common bafs defcends in the fuppofed fcale of A natural, from the octave of the fame A to $\mathbf{G}$ natural, which $\mathbf{G}$ muft be compounded with the octave for the preparation of the gth to $F$, into which the fame bafs defcends from $G$, and the fame 9 th is refolved into F flarp, which is the fuperfluous octave to F natural; this fuperfluous octave F fharp is a minor $3^{\mathrm{d}}$ to D fharp, which is the above explained fixth fuperfluous; and the fame $D$ fharp being the 3 d fharp to B natural, which becomes the guide to the following note E ; confequently F hharp is the perfect fifth to the above guide B , by which accord it feems like a fundamental guide to E, but is only relative guide to the principal fundamental guide of the fale A natural ; and notwithftanding the above B is only a relative guide, being the firtt fucceeding guide of the principal guide E , may have alfo arbitrarily its 3 d fharp, inftead of its minor 3 d ; which B is diftinguifhed clearly for a relative guide by the bafs fubfifting in the note $F$ natural, which cannot be comprifed in the fcale of E , but only in the defcending fcale of A , and the fuperfluous octave F fharp, muft fubfift in the other afcending fcale; confequently it is evident that the note E is not the principal fcale, but its fundamental guide, and the note B the relative guide of the fundamental guide E having the arbitrary privilege of natural minor $3^{\text {d, to be changed at }}$ pleafure into a major 3 d, muft be feen in the above example xv. plate 52 , where, in the fecond meafure of the example, is defrribed the falfe combination of the fuperfluous fifth, and in the fecond time of the fifth meafure both the fuperflous fixth and octave are all marked with (*).

In regard to the feventh diminihed, is the interval betwixt the afcending indicative major third, and the defcending indicative flat gth, which interval is the fame as that of the major 6th, as has been before explained.
N.B. The combination with fifth, fixth, and octave fuperfluous, muft be ufed with judgment, and very feldom, particularly the fuperfluous octave, which is the fame interval of a minor 9 th, becaufe being obliged to refolve itfelf by afcending a full tone for giving the fharp 3d $G$ to the fundamental guide $E$, this refolution becomes fomewhat improper,
and a little harf, for the reafon that all falfes exifting in the fecond octave, have their proper refolution in defcending, and may be ufed in afcending only when all the parts are doubled.

## Article IX. Of the different Motions and Variations of the Parts.

A$S$ the bafs in the figured harmony muft be confidered as one middle part of the combination, being obliged to proceed not only by fkip, but alfo by conjoin'd degree, for the reafons mentioned in the fecond article of this prefent chapter; fo the parts are obliged to proceed in the fame manner for the fame mentioned reafons; therefore by proceeding not only gradually, but alfo by fkips, they pafs from the place of one part to the place of another part, as it may be feen in the example xvi. plate 53. This example is defcribed in five ftaffs, in the firft ftaff is the fuppofed melody, in the fecond ftaff is the fame melody, but varied by the diminutions of the principal notes; the third ftaff has the principal notes of the propofed melody; and the fourth ftaff contains the combination, which is compound, belonging to the fundamental bafs in the laft faff: In the fame combination the principal notes of the melody in their correfpondent notes, as they proceed in the third ftaff, are marked thus (*), by which is fhewn the progreffion of the principal notes of the melody paffing from one part to another in their combination by fkips. The diminutions in the fecond ftaff may be varied gradually, or in fkips, in almoft infinite manners, not only by all the upper parts, but alfo by the common bafs, as mentioned; but in whatfoever manner thefe diminutions may be done, it muft always be correfpondent to the fundamental combination fimple, or may be compound; alfo the refolutions, when the variation is made by kips, muft be done from the note, which is neareft to the fundamental refolution. But for a better, and more diftinct explanation, not only for the different variations and diminutions of the parts, but alfo of the bafs notes, we have chofen to examine the beginning of the firft fonata, a violin folo in the fifth opera of Coreli (being generally known in all countries) for explaining the divers manners of variations by fyncopes, fkips, and all fort of paifages relating to the above purpofe.

This firft fonata which is compofed in the key of D 3 d fharp, confequently is a tranfpofition of the natural fcale a tone higher, begins in a kind of introduction in common time grave, compofed in two meafures. The firft meafure has the upper part of the octave of the note $D$, which is the principal confonant note of the fcale occupied by the bafs; in the middle of the fame meafure, after a little fyncope of the firft note, the part fkips to the 3 d of the accord, from which immediately it defcends gradually to the firft note again, paffing to the note $B$ in the fecond meafure; which $B$ may belong to $E$, as its relative guide, being its perfect fifth, or to the note $G$ to which the note $B$ is its 3 d ; but the author in figuring $4^{\text {th }}$ and 6 th, inftead of 2 d and 4 th, has chofe $G$, being of the better progreffion, particularly in the beginning of a compofition, becaufe the fame $G$ is the immediate fub-principal relative to the principal of the above fcale D , and confequently the more natural, and pleafant progreffion or modulation; and the bafs keeping firm the note $D$ at the beginning of the fecond meafure, makes the falfe accord to the part, which paffing into $B$ tranfpofes the harmony into the note $G$ as fundamental relative, and the inverfion is the fourth and fixth, the fourth is the octave of the fundamental bafs not expreffed in the accord, and the fixth is the note $B$ of the part; and becaufe the progreffion paffes immediately to $A$ by the motion of the part, which after the note $B$ defcends to $A$ octave of the principal guide of the fcale, and the antecedent fundamental note $G$ which cannot gradually afcend to the fame note $A$ in a fundamental progreffion, confequently the fundamental muft defcend with its auxiliar 1kip of 3 d low into the note E , which is the relative guide of the principal guide $A$, and the note $B$ of the part becomes the fifth of the fame relative guide E , defcending to A octave of the principal guide, and the bafs with its relative fkip of cadence afcending to the fame note A principal guide, and the continued note D in the common bafs, becomes the 7 th to the relative guide E , refolving
in C fharp 3 d of the fame principal guide A , and the part defcending with the following note to F .3 d . of the octave of the principal firt note of the fale, the bafs aifo paffes into the principal firft note; all according to the fame laws and rules explained by the canons of the harmonic code. After the above two meafures in grave time, the part moves in quicker time, making a kind of intonation in efffugita, as it is called by the Italians, which in Englifo fignifies flying, paffing fucceffively from one note to another, of the principal fimple combination, afcending by three different tranfpofitions of the combined notes to the higheft pitch of the inftrument, and after defcending in the fame manner to the loweft octave where it begun. The above-faid efsfugita, or intonation, paffes from the notes of the laft meafure into the note G fharp of the fucceeding meafure in adagio, or grave time, which $G$ fharp belonging to $E$ fundamental guide to $A$ as its indicative $3 d$, confequently the firft fcale $D$ is tranfpofed into $A$; and the bafs having always kept firm the note $D$ of the firft fcale, as immoveable fundamental bafs, at leaft inftead of paffing from its ftable fundamental to the fundamental bafs note of progreffion $E$ under its afcending indicative $3^{d}$ occupied by the part, it continues firm in the fame firft note $D$, confequentiy in the antecedent meafure before the adagio time, the fame bafs note D , which has been always a ftable fundamental note, as mentioned, is changed into a common bafs in the middle of the fame laft meafure, in which place it chould have paffed into the note $B$ as relative guide to $E$ fundamental guide in the next meafure under the note $G$ fharp of the part, which $G$ is the indicative $3 d$, leading into the principal note $A$; but the note $D$, in which the bafs ftill continues, becomes the 7 th indicative defcending note into the 3 d of the principal note $A$; and the fame $D$ in the middle of the antecedent meafure becomes the third of the note $B$ relative guide to the fundamental guide $E$, as before-faid. After a little paufe the part begins a melody in common time adagio in the fcale of A 3 d major, with the fifth note of the fcale, in the fame time the bafs note of D 7 th of the fundamental guide $E$ refolves defcending in C Charp, which is the major 3 d of the principal fcale $A$, as may be feen in example xvii. plate 54 . The fame melody is continued in four meafures, making at their ends the perfect cadence in the fame fcale $A$, after which the part repeats the firft little introduction in grave time tranfpofed in the fcale of the note A 3 d fharp, to which follows in the fame fcale the fame firft intonation in flying time, after which the fame antecedent melody, but tranfpofed in the fcale E , and after the fourth meafure, in which it makes the cadence in $E$, continues with its progreffion through the different fcales of A and G, and at laft the melody, accompanied by the bafs, makes the laft cadence in D , the firft chofen fcale.

In the above example is only tranfcribed the firft grave, firft allegro, and the following firft adagio, to which is added the fundamental bafs and its proper notes of the fundamental combination in their reverfion.

The fecond grave allegro and adagio following in the beginning of the faid fonata, is omitted, being only a tranfpofition of the firft grave allegro and adagio, the explanation of which may be applied to the reft omitted; which explanation, joined with the other examples explained by the antecedent articles, feem more than enough to diftinguifh eafily and clearly all forts of inverfions that may be done by fyncopes, diminutions; and other forts of motions different from the fundamental, by the parts and baffes in figurative mufic, with their proper relation to the fundamental harmony.

## C H A P. II.

## Article I. Of Compofitions in divers Parts.



HE figured mufic may be compofed for divers numbers of parts, namely for two, three, four, five, to fixteen or more real parts. The compofitions in two parts, when only one part with a fimple bafs, as a cantata or fong for the voice, is called a cantata or fong a voce fola by the Italians, and for a fimple violin, or flute, or other inftrument with the common bafs, is called alfo a fonata or folo. When the compofitions are defigned for two voices, or two infruments accompanied with a fimple bafs, they are called two, or duetti, by the fame Italians; but when the bafs is concerted with the two fuperior parts, with the addition of another common bafs for the organ, or for the harpficord, are named terzetti in Italian, and trio by the French: The fame of the quatuor, where four concerting parts with a bafs continues. The inftrumental compofitions never pafs the number of four, or at moft five parts real. It may be obferved, that in many compofitions for many different inftruments, as feven, eight, and fometimes for twenty or more parts, they are not all real parts, but the fame principal notes of four or five real parts diftributed in the others in fimple or different manners of diminutions, confequently cannot be called real parts, which fignifies that all are diverlly concerned, not only in the harmony, but alfo in the melody. The vocal compofitions pals much over the inftrumental, going from eight to fixteen, and more real parts; thefe fort of compofitions for eight or fixteen parts, ferve only for church mufic, on occafion of fome great folemnity, which are performed by a great quantity of voices, joined alfo with inftruments, or without. Thefe great compofitions are ordinarily divided into'two or four chorufes, difpofed in a manner, that fometimes one anfwers to another, and are not always in fixteen real parts, but divided in particular compofitions for two, three, or four voices, as in a particular concert ; and fome little choruffes are fometimes mixed, formed by ten or more voices, which are ordinarily fopranos or contraltos finging all together a melody at the unifons, with only an organ playing with tafto folo the fame melody, or with only keeping firm continually the principal note of the guide, or of the firft note of the fcale for to keep the voices in tune; which makes a very pleafant effect when it is done in a proper place, as betwixt two choruffes in full harmony. But when all the choruffes are united, as in the beginning, and at the end of the compofition, the full combination in eight or fixteen parts may be introduced in its proper place. The greateft difficulty in thefe kinds of compofitions, is not only in difpofing the parts in their beft and proper places, but alfo in the difpofition of the different and particular concertos of voices; not only refpectively as to the convenience of the words, but alfo in the repartition of the above divers concertos of voices, in a manner, that being intermixed with the full chorus, one concerto of two, three, or more voices, relieves its following concerto or chorus. In regard to the difpofition of parts, care muft be taken when the chorus proceeds in full harmony, of putting the third fimple combination in the middle of the full combination. And it muft be remembered that the full harmony is compofed with all the notes of the harmonic fyftem, which notes are the three different combinations joined together, belonging to the guides of their different fcales, namely the firft harmony of the fame guide, which is compounded with 3 d , 5 th, and 7 th, to which follows in the fecond place the fimple harmony of its. 7 th, which is the fourth note of its principal fcale, and confequently its fub-principal relative; after which follows the third harmony, which is that belonging to the octave of the principal note of the fcale, ending in the double octave of the fundamental guide. This third and laff fimple harmony, which makes the full harmony, is that which muft be diftributed into the middle parts of the full combinations; particularly the third of the fame laft harmony, which is the thirteenth in the full combination, being too much fenfible when it is a major 3 d , and confequently makes confufion in all the combination; for that reafon the fame 3 d muft
be in the middle, but the beft way is only to ufe it in fome cafes of neceffity. The octave and the fifth, or twelfth, of the faid third combination, may be ufed fometimes in the extreme high part of the combination, particularly to give fome ftrong expreffion to the words when there is occafion; but ordinarily in the high extreme muft be placed one of - the two afcending or defcending indicative notes, which are, as has been explained, the 3 d and 7 th of the guide; or in the artificial fcale inftead of the 7 th, the 9th, which is properly the indicative defcending note of the artificial fcale: by this difpofition, the principal parts being alfo doubled and tripled, the progreffion into the different fcales is fenfibly and clearly diftinguifhed without confufion. In thefe greateft compofitions may be ufed all forts of falfes by fuppofition, by change, and fometimes by anticipation, but thefe very feldom, and only in the final cadences, as has been explained in the canons; alfo may be ufed all uncommon refolutions afcending, together with the common in defcending, but in the manner explained in the fame canons. But in compofitions of only eight parts, when they are in full combination, the uncommon falfes and refolutions afcending, muft not be ufed fo freely as in fixteen or more parts, becaufe ordinarily the parts are not doubled enough, as in more parts, by which the notes, not only doubled, but tripled and quatripled, frengthen the principal founds of the compound combination ; otherwife a compofition in five real parts will have a better effect. But when all the fixteen parts are doubled and tripled, and all well difpofed in their preper places, with a progreffion gradually afcending, and fucceffively defcending, make a wonderful impreffion, not fo eafily perceived by thofe who never heard thefe fort of performances.

In the compofitions in two, three, and four parts, the obligation of following the principal harmonic laws is very precife; and particularly in two or three parts, which compofitions being formed only by two or three founds, muft be chofen from the reft of the full combination the propereft for the beft harmony. In two parts, viz. for one voice or inftrument, with a fingle bafs ferving meerly for compliment, it is very eafy to be done, but when the bafs muft follow the part with good tafte, intermixed with fome proper melody by imitation or contraft, to the melody of the part helping them, and without the leaft confufion, it is not fo eafy. The fame is in three parts, when the bafs under the two parts proceed only for a fimple compliment, in which manner may be called a duetto or two, which is eafier than when the bafs is obliged to anfwer to the melody of the two parts, in which cafe are properly called trio or terzetti, with another bafs for the clavicord or organ, in fimple compliment of the harmony, or without the fame. In like manner may be confidered the quatuor, as before explained.

In compofitions for two or three parts, are abfolutely forbidden two perfect fifths or two octaves following one another, for the reafon of being fimple confonant, and not harmonic, as mentioned and explained in the firt canon of the harmonic code, IId book; and, in two parts, not only rigouroully are forbidden the two fifths or two octaves explicit, but alfo implicit ; confequently when the part proceeds not by thirds or fixths, or by the falfes, as fecond and feventh, it muft always proceed by contrary motion, and this proceeding is a general rule. In compofitions in three parts, muft be combined always the fundamental third, in whatfoever denomination it may be, as a 2 d , 4 th, or 6 th fharp or flat, in all the combinations when it is poffible, and more proper for the harmony. In compofitions for four parts, are permitted two fifths or octaves, but only in contrary motion, becaufe two other parts may fupply the firft original harmony.
N. B. It muft be obferved, that in compofitions of fimple and compound combination, the third of the fcale when it is fharp is better in the middle of the accord than in the extreme acute; confequently the feventh, when it refolves into the fharp 3 d , muft alfo be covered with come other found of the fame accord, and not be in the acute part, in which manner the refolution into the fharp third, becomes in the middle of the following combination : on the contrary, when the fcale has its 3 d flat, this flat 3 d is beft in the high extreme, and confequently the fundamental 7 th of the guide muft alfo be in the extreme high part. The above rule in regard to the fcale of the fharp third, is diametrically oppofite to that, which
has been mentioned in regard to full harmony: the reafon is, that the full harmony being compofed of all the three principal harmonies of the fcale, as in the fcale of $C$, are $G, F, C$, muft neceffarily have their indicative notes into the higheft place of the combination for to diftinguifh their fundamental and principal harmony, otherways they nay be confounded. But the fimple and compound harmony cannot be confounded by the above three harinonies, one of which is excluded, and the acute found being in the acute part, confequently the more fenfibly weakens the other founds of the combination; fo on the contrary, the flat founds, which are in proportion of leffer fenfation, are always better in the higheft part.

Thefe general obfervations in the compofitions of divers numbers of parts, may be fubject to fome exceptions on feveral occafions, particularly on account of the melody, alfo for fome particular expreffions by the harmony; all which the compofer may diftinguilh when he has acquired a fufficient practice and knowledge of the compofitions.

## Article II. Of Fugues and Initations.

THOSE kinds of compofitions, in which one part begins a fubject of melody, and after fome paufe, or refts, another part follows in a like or the fame fubject, is called fugue by muficians: it is diftinguifhed in real fugue and imitation. The real fugue, as improperly called, is when the part which follows the firft repeats the fame fubject, or near the fame propofed by the firft part, at the unifon, or fourth, or fifth, or at the octave; but without departing from the founds of the octave propofed by the firft fubject. The imitation is called when the fubject of melody is repeated by the following part in whatfover note of the octave, at the pleafure of the compofer, as in the $2 \mathrm{~d}, 3 \mathrm{~d}, 4^{\text {th }}, 5$ th, 6 th, 7 th, and octave, without being obliged to keep the fame repeat or anfwer in the fame octave. The real fugues are generally ufed in church-mufic ; but very improperly ufed, and very improperly named; becaufe the faid repeat or anfwer being obliged to be done in the limits of the propofed octave, cannot be always like the propofed fubject, but it muft be altered in fome notes for fake of the mode, as it is called by muficians, which we call fcale, or octave, in which has been propofed the fubject by the firft part. On the cantrary, the imitation gives always the anfwer very like the propofed fubject, being not conftrained to the fame mode, or octave; confequently the imitations are in better right to be called real fugues, or real imitations: but becaufe Guido Aretino in harmonizing the Cantus Gregorian applied to the fervice of the church, which are divided in eight different modes, has followed the Greek manner of finging thofe cantus without forting from their different modes or octaves; fo the fucceffive chorifters, and choir-mafters of thofe firft times, being better acquainted with the Greek modes than with the different harmonic combinations, and knowing only the moft fimple harmony introduced by Guido; confequently they, with all fucceffive muficians to this prefent time, have fuppofed and do fuppofe, that the fugues in the precife compafs of the octave called modes, be the very proper fugues calling them reals; and the imitations, becaufe fometimes change the octave, paffing into the following octave of the fifth afcending or defcending, are confidered as improper and irregular: but now, that the harmony is arrived to its perfection, and the fame melody is come out of its old bondage, and alfo arrived to its perfection, being totally changed, and the old mãnner only conferved and practifed in the common fervices of the church, feem very convenient that the old terms and names, when improperly applied to the prefent mufic, may be juftly changed. The above-faid fugues and imitations are alfo very improper for the church, but of that more will be fpoken in the article of the church-mufic. Theie fugues, or imitations, which feem as a mufical pedantry, notwithftanding they may be ufed with tafte and judgment, and properly varied; which very feldom happens, are ordinarily, and not properly fit for the general pleafure of the public: But the ftudy and practifing them are the beft and neceffary means for acquiring a perfect knowledge of all forts of combinations and progreffions of harmony, which renders very eafy the compofing in mufic: therefore, a ftudent in the harmonic art mult never neglect practifing the compofition of all forts of
fugues, not only in the limitted manner of thofe called real fugues, but alfo in all forts of imitations, not for the public pleafure, but for his own ftudy. In this manner he will be capable of compofing and adapting the harmony to all forts of melody as he pleafes, in the manner which is called by the Italians fugato, or by imitation and by reverfion, or adding together different melodies, without the oftentation of continuing the fame fubject in a real fugue or imitation, fometimes more than an hundred meafures in a dry fugue or imitation, only by rambling from one fcale or octave to another ; and often with a bad melody and harmony.

## Article III. Of the Manner of compofing Fugues and Initations.

THE art of compofing fugues and imitations, is not generally fo hard as it is fuppofed; what may be a little hard for thofe particularly who are not furnifhed with a good tafte, is for a prompt invention of a good melody, which muft be for the beft compaffed in leffer meafures, as is poffible. If the chofen fubject may be divided in two parts, it will be of good ufe in the continuation of the compofition in hortening them, by which the anfwer of the fecond part coming fooner makes the greater variety. When the fubject of melody is chofen, it mutt be obferved if the anfwer becomes proper, particularly if the fugue is what is called real, as above-mentioned ; (it muft be remembered that the principal notes of the octave are two, namely the fiift note which is the principal of the fcale, and the fifth note which is its guide) if the fubject is between the principal note and its guide, the anfwer which follows muft be betwixt the guide and the octave of the principal. For example, fuppofing the natural fcale $C$, the fubject beginning in $C$ paffes to $D$, the anfwer is $G$ to $A$; if the

- beginning is $D$ paffing to $E$, the anfwer is $A$ to $B$; alfo beginning in $E$ to $F$, the anfwer is B to C : but when the notes of the fubject proceed by fkips, the refponce is fomewhat different; for infance, if the fubject paffes directly from $C$ to $G$, fkipping a fifth higher or a fourth lower, the refponce is $G$ to $C$, fkipping a fourth higher or a fifth lower; becaufe the note C is the extreme acute of the principal C its octave below, which in the above fugue real is forbid the paffing over; but in the imitation the refponce is from $G$ to $D$, and the fubject fkipping from $D$, or from $E$ to $C$, muft repeat $A C$, or $B C$, if the fubject defcends from $C$ to $B$ returning to $C$, the anfwer defcends from $G$ to $F$, and from $F$ to $E$, becaufe $F$ being diftant a full tone, which is the perfect fourth of the principal, becomes the flat feventh of the guide $G$, the fame feventh being the indicative defcending note of the fcale, confequently muft be naturally refolved into $E$, which is the third of the principal $C$; but by imitation the juft refponce may be done by $G$ to $F$ fharp returning in $G$, which cannot be done in real fugue, the fame $F$ fharp being not comprized in the fcale of C. This fhort diftinction feems enough for the knowledge of the difference betwixt the fugues called real, and the fimple imitations; being the enumeration of the divers proceeding of the various fubjects of melody of too large a defcription, and of very little ufefulnefs to the modern practice of the beft compofitions of mufic. Now, returning to the compofition of fugues, when the fubject is chofen to which the anfivers become juft, the fame anfwer muft be introduced in the laft note of the propofed fubject, if that is poffible, or nearer the laft note ; and the anfwer being introduced, the firf part muft proceed upon the fame anfwer, with fome different melody, which may correfpond to the proper harmony; after which, the refponce being compleat, if there follows more, of two or three parts, the preceeding parts muft go on ftill with fome different melody upon the refponces of all the following parts, which melody muft have fome little connexion to the firft fubject; or, infead of fimple melody, may be introduced what is called a contra fubject, upon or near upon the fame propofed fubject; and, after all the parts have done, and paffed every one the fubject and its contra fubject, they muft all together make a cadence; which ordinarily is in the fcale of the fifth note high of the firft propofed fcale, being its nearer fcale in the progreffion of harmony, and the fame cadence may be of terminate or indeterminate harmony at the pleafure of the compofer.

If the fame cadence is of terminate harmony, ordinarily the firft fubject is repeated, in the middle of which, if it is poffible, muft follow the contra fubject; or, when there is a contra fubject, it may be propofed firft, and for its anfwer the firft fubject; but if the anfwer cannot be introduced in the middle of the fame fubject, or contra fubject, the fubject may be fhortened to introduce the anfwer fooner than it was done in the beginning of the fugue, or imitation. But the proceeding in thefe fugues and imitations, being made in almoft infinite manners at the pleafure of the compofer, and the defcription of thefe different manners being not poffible to be-done in a fmall compafs, as before-faid, confequently an example to be explained will be the fhorter way, and more profitable for knowing the proceeding of the above fugues or imitations: for this purpofe we have chofen the firft fugue, in the firft allegro of the firft fonata, a violino folo, opera 5 th, of Corelli, the beginning of which fonata was explained in the ninth article of the antecedent chapter. The above fugue is compofed in the fcale of D , with its third harp: the firft note begins in the unaccented time of the meafure, afcending gradually from the third note of the fcale to the fifth note, from which it defcends a fifth, which is the note $D$ octave of the principal D of the fcale, ; in which manner making a bafs cadence, the above note D is properly the end of the fubject; but, for the fake of introducing the anfwer of the fecond part, the above fubject is augmented with another different fubject, which ferves as an half part of the total fubject, and alfo as a melody for unitirig a contra fubject, which forms the end of the intire fubject propofed, and the above contra fubject lines the refponce of the fecond part, which is done in repeating the propofed fubject in the fourth note below, which is C harp, third note to A guide to the chofen fcale D, after the fame fecond part has repeated the firft, and the fecond part of the fubject, has been added fome notes in half a meafure for returning in the accord of the principal note D , paffing into the third part of the fubject, which makes the contra fubject, giving at the fame time the opportunity of introducing the third anfwer performed by the bafs, as a third part, beginning the fame anfwer in the laft unaccented time of the fourth meafure, continuing as was done by the firft part, at the end of which he makes a perfect cadence in D , repeating after the contra fubject done by the fecond part; but, inftead of keeping the harmony in D , as was done by the fame fecond part, he paffes B as guide to the following note E , which, as principal guide tranfpofes the harmony in A, having the fuperior part in the middle accord as it were a fourth part, repeats the fubject in the accord of the above relative guide B, paffing immediately into the principal guide E, making the cadence in A, with only the firf part of the fubject ; and, with the fecond part of the fame fubject, continues in the fame accord of A , not as principal, but as guide to D , in which they fall with the end of the fame fecond part of the fubject, after which immediately follows as before a fifth part, which repeat all the fubject, as has be'en done in the beginning by the firft part, but in the lower octave ; and the bafs, under the fecond part of the fubject, makes the contra fubject, joining with the fame the beginning of the above fubject in the accord of the guide $A$, as being a fixth part; and at the end of the fecond part of the fubject, and under the third part of the fame, the bafs, as being a feventh part, repeats another time the fubject in the accord of the principal note D , making the cadence in A , as guide to the fame principal, with the firft part of the fubject continuing with the fecond part of the fame; at the end of which is repeated the fame fubject in the accord of D , by the fame bafs, but at the lower octave, as being done by an eighth part performed by a fuppofing contra bafs or organ, the fubject being difpofed in the above manner as it were in eight parts, terminating with the cadence in the principal note of the chofen fcale D. (See the fame fugue defcribed in example xviii. plates $55,56,57$, and 58 .) After the above cadence in D principal, the firft part begins another different fubject, which indeed is the fame as the firft, but with diminifhed notes, which is followed by a fecond part, and fucceffively by the bafs; after which is an interval of melody in imitation of the firft contra fubject, continuing in the fame imitation for two meafures and a half, after the repetition of the above diminifhed fubject in the accord of the guide A, accompanied by the firft part with the contra fubject, which makes the third part of the firft chofen fubject, after which the fame part immediately anfwers to the diminifhed fubject of the bafs, in the octave of the fame accord of the guide; and
directly the fecond part anfwers to the fame diminifhed fubject, but in the accord of the principal note D at the lower octave, to which follows, as being two and three parts joined together into the violino, giving the accord to the bafs, which moves by fkips, of guide and cadence, but diminifhed with cromas or quavers, all together making a perfect cadence in B; after which follows an arpegio, by three fuperior parts joined into the violino, the bafs continuing with its diminifhed fkips of cadence, or of guide, for above nine meafures, at laft making the cadence in D ; but the violino continuing the arpegio, the bafs accompanying it, but with fimple notes, 'till the fame cadence in $D$ is repeated; after which the bafs repeats the firft beginning of the fubject, to which is anfwered by the fame bafs as a tenor, but the violino begins a melody, as being divided in two parts; the firft propofes a fubject in the accented time of the meafure, and the fecond gives the anfwer into the fecond quarter not accented of the fame meafure, continuing in this manner for four meafures, after the two parts change the melody in a kind of arpegio performed by diftinct fkips, which alfo may be fuppofed, divided in two parts, the firft part in the firft divifion and the fecond part into the fecond divifion, making at laft the cadence in A, and immediately, as a fimple part, the violino propofes the beginning of the fubject in the lower part of the octave of the chord A, which, inftead of being anfwered, another upper part propofes three fimple notes of the fame fubject diminifhed, to which directly is anfwered by a fuppofed other fuperior part with the fame three notes, but tranfpofed into the chord of $D$, to which the bafs inftantly follows with the fame intire fubject diminifhed, in the chord of $D$ paffing in $G$, and after in A as principal of indeterminate harmony, from which it is changed by its relative guide E , into the guide A fundamental and ftable, as a pedal in the organ, keeping firm under the parts in the fiddle, which gradually paffes in arpegio the notes of the accord of the principal D , to that of the guide A , in compound harmony, from which the firft part paffes with an esfugita, as it is called in Italian, into the fimple accord of the guide, making at laft the terminate final cadence, (fee the above fugue in the mentioned example xviii.) The fundamental bafs has been added in the beginning in two different manners to the common bafs of the above fugue, not only for to fhew directly the progreffion, and the conftruction of the fame, but alfo for a more abundant inftruction of the different relations between the combinations of founds, and its progreffion in figured and in fundamental harmony ; fhewing the relation of all the fyncopes; diminutions of notes, and fkips paffing from one part to another in the figured harmony. In regard to the compofition of the fame fugue, it is evident, that not only the very fame fubject, but alfo the progreffion, or (as commonly called) the modulation, is of a very dry nature ; the melody of the fubject being very indifferent, and its progreffion being repeated above eight times fucceffively, continuing always only in the two principal chords of its octave, furely it cannot be fuppofed that the fame progreffion be too much varied, and only properly fit for church-mufic, but not for what is called mufic of camera, or other public and private diverfion. But, confidering the undertaking of putting two or more parts joined into the compafs of one fiddle, and the variety which has been ufed in the management of the fame fubject, in repeating them fometimes in the octave high and low, and fometimes all the fubject, and fometimes only one part of the fame; all that made not only excufable, but laudable, and prettily pleafant the above compofition; in the middle of which has been alfo intermixed fome different melody, and fome harmony with arpegio, all very proper to the principal fubject.

From what has been faid, the ftudent of the harmonic art may know the conftruction and continuation of fugues. It muft be obferved, that when the fubject of a fugue, or imitation, is chofen, and followed by its proper anfwer, if the ftudent will put under the fame fubject and anfwer its fundamental bafs, with all the combinations fimple, compound, or full, which can be afforded by the bafs, in obferving all the different accords, and in diminifhing their principal notes in divers manners, he will certainly find fome melody which may ferve as a contra fubject proper to be intermixed with the compofition, or follow the fame firft fubject, as we have feen in the above explained fugue of Corelli, in which the contra fubject follows directly the fubject, and the fame contra fubject may be under the fame fubject, being
compofed in its fundamental accord, muft alfo be obferved the manner with which has been diminifhed the fame firf fubject producing a different fubject, and may be alfo obferved the laft allegro of the fame fonata, which is compofed by the fame fubject in fugue, only differently diminifhed, and put in the proper order refpectively to the difference of the meafure, which in the laft above fugue is in triple time. And for a fure practife of the management of the fugues and imitations, it muft obferve not only one, but many of the beft authors compofitions, examining attentively their manner of proceeding in their fubjects, contra fubjects, combinations, and progreffions, in fugues and imitations, and their divers melodies introduced betwixt them, particularly in what is called fugue real, as the anfwers to the fubjects of the fame fugues are not always regular. In the above manner, and with a competent practice of the management of all forts of fugues and imitations, the ftudent in the harmonic art will in time find very eafy all forts of compofitions harmonic.
$N$.B. It muft be obferved that the fundamental bafs may be put in divers manners, under and to the fame fimple melody, with its proper and different accords, by which the progreflion or modulation is changed, as may be feen in example xix. plate 59 . in which the natural fcaie is expreffed in afcending and defcending with different fundamental baffes; it muft alfo be obferved, that the fundamental bafs proceeding with the auxiliar perfect 1 kip , joined with the perfect confonant fkip of cadence (as it is expreffed in the third bafs of the fame example xix.) is not the proper progreffion for only two parts, becaufe with the fame progreffion the combination is formed by unifons or octaves in the accented time, and divided only by the third in the time not accented (as it is between the bafs and the notes of the afcending fcale) without the third in the accented time, and always without the fifth, the harmony becomes empty in the accented time, which is the beft and moft fenfible in the progreffion : but, in three and four parts, as it is in the faid above example, in which in three parts always the third fubfifts in the accented time, and the fifth in the unaccented, and better in four parts, where the combination is complete, confequently the fame proceeding of the above third bafs may be ufed at pleafure. The proceeding alfo with the fkip of cadence, as it is done by the fourth fundamental bafs under the fame natural fcale defcending, expreffed in the above example xix. plate 59. is improper under the fimple notes of the defcending fcale, being the combination only by fifth and octave, without third, and confequently unharmonic, but when it is joined with all fimple accord, may alfo be ufed freely.

## Article IV. Of Canons.

CANONS may be called perpetual fugues, or imitations, becaufe they are compofed upon a fimple fubject of melody, without being mixed with any other melody, which fubject being introduced and terminated by a firft part, the fecond part follows immediately with the fame melody, and the firf continues in the fame time another melody, which may be proper to the fame firft melody, and the fecond part continues the fame in its progrefficns: if the canon is performed by many other parts, all proceed in the fame manner, confequently the melody or fubject being introduced by the parts, one after another, all the parts cannot but end together all the fubject. The compofition of thefe canons confift in chufing a melodious fubject, at the end of which muft be introduced the fame fubject by a fecond part, with the fame notes at the unifons, or tranfpofed in whatfoever founds of the chofen octave, as at the fecond, third, fourth, E'c. at the pleafure of the compofer; upon the notes of this fecond part muft be continued, by the firft part, a proper melody forming the continuation of the propofed fubject, which melody is after repeated by the fecond part; under which, if another following part is introduced another time, the firt beginning propofed by the firft part, to which the fame third part follows always the firlt and fecond part in the fame proceeding with their melody; and the firft part compofing always a new proper melody upon the under part till at the end of the fong or tune,
after which the fame firlt part immediately begins another time the propofed tune cr fong at the time that the other part continues its refpective tune or long till finifhed, at the end of which it begins the fame again. For to find out the proper harmonic melody to the following notes of every one of the parts, the fame beginining of the tune propofed muft be united with all the compound, or full harmony, which can be fupported by the beginning of the fame tune or fong propofed; and from this compofition and reverfion, will be found out all the changes that may be done in the propofed fubject. It has been mentioned that fugues and imitations are only proper for inftrumental, and not for vocal mufic, as will be clearly fhewn by the reafon that will be produced in the article of vocal mufic. On the contrary, the canons are only proper for a fimple diverfion in vecal mufic, and not for inftrumental; thefe canons being ordinarily extremely dry, conféquently they cannot afford great pleafure to the fenfation; but in the vocal, the fame words, which ordinarily are comic, fupply the dry progreflion of the canons. The canons only in two parts are more eafy and pleafant, becaufe they may be compofed with fome varied progreflion, as it is to be feen in example xxi. plate 6I. but in four parts are always dry and the words confounded. The example xx. plate 60 . is in four parts at the unifon in the feale of D natural third, divided in time alla breve, as called by muficians. The firft part begins a melody in the firf meafure, and the fecond part anfwers the fame melody at the unifons in its firt meafure, which is the fecond meafure of the firft part: The third part alfo in its firf meafure (which is the third meafure of the firft, and the fecond of the fecond part) repeats the antecedent melody propofed by the firf part in the beginning, following after the fame melody at the unifons, as it has done in the fecond part: The fourth part follows in the fame manner as the other antecedent parts has done, following fucceffively the fame melody propofed by the firft part, and every one terminating their melody before every one of the fucceffive following parts; every one repeats immediately the fame melody one after another, as they have begun, continuing repeating the fame at pleafure, putting at laft the end, as it is marked in the fame example xxi. plate 6r. In this example it muft be obferved, that the melody of the canon has no other progreffion but only fucceffively paffing from the notes of the accord of the principal note of the fcale $D$ to thofe of its fundamental guide A, every firft half part of all the meafures belonging to the accord of the principal, and the other fecond part to the notes of the guide; the fundamental bafs. paffing in every meafure from the principal to the fame guide. That has been done exprefsly for an eafy and clear explanation of that, which muft always be obferved in continuing the compofition of the melody with its proper reference to the following parts, and to the fundamental bafs; and by this obfervation is known how many changes may be fupported by every note of whatfoever propofed combination, as it is apparent in the fame canon. It muft alfo be obferved, that a canon in four parts at the unifon, the progreffion cannot be altered till paft the laft meafure, in which the laft part puts an end to its melody, but after all the parts have terminated their melody or fong, the progreffion may be changed, and continued in another fcale with a different melody, which may properly be united with the beginning of the firf melody; but that brings the canon very long and improper for a compofition, which ferves only as a tune, or fong by memory, for a fimple diverfion in a garden, room, of freet.

## Article V. Of Cadences.

1N the firt book, chapter iv. articles i . and ii. it has been explained, that all progreffions in mufic muft be done by the harmonic combination of the founds belonging to the firft principal notes of the fcales, and to their fifth notes, which are the fundamental guides of the fame principal notes. To thefe two principal notes have been added two other notes, which ferve both as auxiliar to the two other above-mentioned, and thefe added notes are two thirds, one below, the other above their firft principal notes. From the motions of thefe above four notes, the two principal, and the two auxiliar, which are the places of the fundamental bafs, all progreffions in mufic are made by continuail cadences, as it is clearly apparent by all the canons of the harmonic code; therefore the compofition of mufic may be defined an harmonic progreflion of divers cadences, viz. fimple, compound, and broken, and are diftinguifhed in different manners; firf, in perfect and imperfect; the perfect cadences are the product of the perfect confonant kkip of a fifth low; and the imperfect cadences are produced from the other confonant imperfect fkip of fifth high. Secondly, in terminate and indeterminate harmony: The two above perfect and imperfect fkips, may be both of terminate and indeterminate harmony. The cadences arifing from the two auxiliar fkips are all of indeterminate harmony. The terminate harmony compofes the final and middle cadences. The final cadences are thofe which put an end to the compofition, and the middle thofe which terminate fome particular periods in the courfe of the compofition. The final cadences muft be done in the principal note of the fcale, in which was begun the compofition, accompanied only by the more fimple accord, namely in two and three parts, with only the unifon or octave ; in four parts the unifon, fifth and octave ; in five parts may be added the third; and in fix or more parts may be doubled the fifth and octave, preferable to the third, particularly if it is major, being by its own nature more fenfible than the two confonants, as before-mentioned. The manner of doubling the two confonant notes has been fhewn by the third canon of the harmonic code. In the number of the final cadences is one, which is imperfect, and it is particularly ufed in church mufic for diftinction of the old eight Greek modes in authentic and plagal, as has been explained in the introduction. This imperfect final cadence, inftead of defcending fromz the fundamental guide, defcends from the fourth note to the principal; but this final cadence, which is done ordinarily immediately after the perfect cadence, muft be in a very now manner, by which is fhewn that it is a final cadence. The middle cadences are the fame as the final, and may be done in three and four parts, with the addition of the third, when it may ferve for the progrefs of the harmony. Sometimes thefe middle cadences may be imperfect, deriving from the conionant imperfect $\int$ kip of a fifth high, and are called fufpended cadences, becaufe they fop at the fundamental guide, without defcending into the principal note of the octave. Thefe fort of fufpended cadences are ufed and applied to fome particular expreffions, as points of interrogations, admirations, or exclamations, and more frequently in the recitative manner; which fort of cadences being of terminate harmony, muft alfo be done with fimple combination, which is with the major third, perfect fifth, and octave. All other cadences, perfec̣t and imperfect, which are compounded with the 7 th, 9 th, or other fuperior thirds, are all of indeterminate harmony, which fuppofes the continuation of the harmony for the refolutions of the fuperior thirds, called difcords by muficians, as has been mentioned in the above chapter iv. article i. By there diverfe cadences is done all forts of fundamental progreffrons, as before-mentioned ; but is not fo clearly perceived in figurate mufic as it is by the fundamental, becaufe the parts and the bafs moving in different manners, inverts the original fundamental combination, as it is explained in the firft chapter of this prefent book, and by this means breaks alfo the order of the fundamental cadences, in which order of the fame fundamental cadences the common bafs muft be at laft united; but it happens fooner or later, according to the pleafure of the compofer : Therefore all inverted cadences may be called broken cadences; between thefe broken cadences is one which apparently differs from the others, and is broken by
the motion of the bafs, when is formed the combination fimple or compound, upon one of the fundamental guides of whatfoever fcale; which guide, inftead of paffing into the principal note of its octave a fifth low, or a fourth high, paffes immediately to the next fucceffive acute note, breaking in this manner the true cadence; which kind of cadences may be called deceptive cadences, derived from the fuppofed motions of the auxiliar fkip of third low. As for example, the bafs being in G, which, fuppofing the natural fcale of C is its fundamental guide, and inftead of paffing and making the cadence in its principal note $C$, paffes, afcending a note to $A$, as a relative fcale; but as a fundamental bafs cannot proceed by joint degree, muft fuppofe that the latter end of the bats note $G$ is changed into a common bafs, as being in the third note of the relative guide E to $A$, and the fundamental bafs as defcended from $G$ to the fame relative guide $E$ for paffing to $A$, with the proper and juft fkip of cadence.

Thefe deceiving cadences are like the broken cadences, which derive all from the gradual motion of the common bafs, all depending from the auxiliar fkips; only the ordinary broken cadences pafs fucceffively from one note to another, without keeping the antecedent note in one accented time as it is done by the guide: But the defcending perfect cadences keep the antecedent note, as properly a fundamental guide divided in two, the one accented, the other not accented, paffing after into the next note, which alfo is in accented time. See the examples i. ii. iii. iv. and v. plate 62. by which are delineated and exprefled all the above forts of cadences. For compofing the fame cadences, the final cadences muft have the guide in two times, one accented the other unaccented, as abovementioned, particularly in grave or adagio time, the accented part may be in compound harmony, and in the other following unaccented part it muft for the better being refolved the compound into the fimple harmony, paffing after into the fimple note, as it is expreffed in the firt example, plate 62. The middle cadences may be fometimes done in a manner which may be called a flying cadence (as thofe which may be feen in the fecond example of plate 62.) but very feldom, particularly in vocal mufic, becaufe when the cadence is at the end of a terminate period, this cadence muft be regularly and fenfibly done, obferving the expreffion of the fong and the value of fyllables. The broken cadences properly are made by all the notes which compofe the harmony, when thofe notes inftead of paffing with their following notes into their proper fundamental places, fyncopes the firf note, or paffes into thofe of a different fcale, relative, or principal may be, as may be feen in the third example of the above plate. The fourth example fhews the deceptive cadences, and the fifth the other cadences, called fufpended, as above explained.

## Article VI. Of Accents.

MUSIC has its proper accents as well as difcourfe. The accent in fpeaking, may be diftinguifhed into three principal fignifications; one in regard to the fenfe of the words and periods, the other to the pronunciation of fyllables; and the laft to the diftinction of the periods. The firft is performed by the flexibility of the voice, in changing the founds a little from the grave to the acute, or vice verfat, according to the diverfe fenfe of the words and periods, and conformable to the cuftom of the diverfe particular languages; and this flexibility of the voice, being diverfe, and in almoft every language, cannot be expreffed in writing. The fecond fignification regarding the pronunciation of the fyllables in fhort or long, as every one knows the language of his own country by common habitude, confequently only fome equivocal fyllables are marked in writing by fome accent, which are called acute, grave, and circumflex. The third fignification, which regards the divifion and diftinction of periods, muft neceffarily be expreffed in writing by fome points, columns, commas, and points, by which the different little refts, which in fpeaking muft be ufed between the different periods, are perfectly known. Befides thefe figns referring to the diftinction of periods, fome others are uited, which not only ferve to the fame diftinction of periods, but to diAtinguifh their particular fenfe, and they are called points of interrogation, admiration, and exclamation,
exclamation, by which, in fpeaking, the flexion of the voice is appropriated to their particulat fenfe, in a little different manner from that which commonly ferves to the fenfe of the other periods. The fame may be confidered in mufic ; but in a manner fome-what diverfe, but more juft and perfect. All the above different fignifications are diftinctly and properly indicated by the divers notes, and other different figns, which notes and figns are all delineated in the plates 4 and 5 , explained at the end of the introduction; to which notes and figns the flexibility of the voice, the pronunciation of fyllables, and the different diffinction of periods, muft exactly be conformed. The notes, with their value in the meafure of time, are all expreffed in plate 4 , and defcribed in ten figures. The firft figure has the longeft in time, and the tenth, which is the laft, fhews the fhorteft. To every one of the fame notes, immediately follows the number of meafures, or parts of the meafure; which fhews the value of the fame notes, and under them the different figns, which indicates their refpective refts. The afcending, and defcending of the above notes, as it is exprefied in the examples iii. iv. and v. plate 5. denotes the diverfe flexibility of the voice, done in its proper time, which time is denoted at the beginning of the compofition with its proper figns, as are exprefied by the firft and fecond figures, plate 5 . and in regard of explaining the notes, as allegro, grave, or adagio, the fame fenfe of the words gives the direction of it; but the inftrumental mufic being deprived of words, the terms adagio, grave, and prefto, which belongs to the meafure of the time, and the others which relates to the expreffion, as affetuofo, allegro, or vivace, andante, fciolto, or legato, muft be always noted at the beginning of the compofition under the fign of time. In regard to the pronunciation of the fyilables, long, or breve, the fame notes which divides the meafure of time, muft be put in one proper order, by which the pronunciation may be done in a proper and eafy manner for exprefling the long and breve, and at laft, for expreffion of the diftinction and divifions of periods, are the diverfe fort of cadences, as are explained by the antecedent article; or, inftead of them, the divers refts as are noted under every note defcribed in the above plate 4 . which indicates the paufes, or refts, which muft be betwixt one period to another. We have feen in its proper place, that time in mufic, and their refpective meafures, may be divided in equal and unequal parts. The time alla breve, a capella, or common time, and their other derivations, as ${ }_{4}^{2}, \frac{4}{8}, \mathcal{E}^{2} c$. are all divided in meafures, which may be fub-divided by equal parts; on the contrary, the meafures of triple time are divided by unequal parts. The meafures which may be divided in two equal parts, have their firft part accented, and the fecond part unaccented; when the fame meafures are divided in four parts, by four equal notes, the firft note and the third are accented, and the fecond and fourth not accented, as it is diftinguifhed in example vii. plate 62 . but when the fecond snote, which is unaccented, being in two notes, the firt of the two becomes accented, the fecond unaccented; and the firft part of the meafure being divided by four' equal notes, the firft and the third are accented, the fecond and fourth notes not accented, as it is cxpreffed in the above plate 62. example viii. where every note is marked with their particular fign long, or breve, expreffed thus (-long, $u$ breve) and the general rule is this, that all notes of whatfoever but like value, joined together, the firf is the accented, and the fecond unaccented, computing in the fame manner the following notes, fo far as they continue compofed by the fame value; but the principal accents are always two, the firft is in the firft note of the meafure, which may be confidered as the very firft principal, and the fecond accent which alfo may be confidered at the fecond principal, is in the firft note of the fecond part of the fame meafure. In triple time the accent falls fomewhat different into the notes of their relative meafures. In the times divided by the figns of equality before fpoken, being the accent principally confidered in the firft note of the meafure, and alfo in the firft note of the fecond part of the fame meafure; confequently all the middle and final cadences may be alternately in both of the fame two principal accents, but in time of triples, the firft accent, when the meafure is divided by three equal notes, is in the firft note, and the fecond accent is the laft; the middle note being confequently unaccented, as it is expreffed in example ix. of the above plate 62. The middle, and particularly the final perfect cadences muft have their laft and final notes in the firft accent of the next meafure; and this is a general rule which has an exception when the tune or air
is compofed for the dance; in which, beginning the tune by the firt note of the meafure, conicquently the laft cadence being obliged to pafs immediately to the farne beginning of the tune, is alfo obliged to have the laft cadence in the fecond accent of the meafure for repeating immediately the tune; and in this cafe, the above general rule is facrificed to the dance, as has been formerly and commonly done, and it is to be feen in fome triples of Corelli's operas: But in rigour of mufical accent, it is always abufively done. In the fame triple time, the fecond accent-is not enough for a perfect cadence, and at leaft muft be employed the fecond note of the meafure joined with the third note of the meafure following the laft note of the cadence in the firft accented note of the next meafure; and for final cadence, the beft is when all the three notes of the meafure are occupied by the fundamental guide. The perfect cadences are the more pleafant after an harmonic progreffion, which is done (as has been feen in the antecedent article) by a continuation of broken, flying, and other divers cadences, confequently in all forts of time they, muft be done in a very fenfible and melodious manner. In vocal mufic, its accent muft be conformed and joined to that of the words; but in inftrumental mufic, being deprived of words, the accent is eafily miftaken and mifplaced, particularly by the compofers who has had no better mafter than his own genius, or practice of the harpficord. It has been repeated that mufick is compofed by way of diverfe forts of cadences. Thefe divers forts of cadences are to be confidered in fome gradual order. The principal cadences, the perfect and imperfect, confonant and fundamental cadences muft be placed in the firft order ; to which may be added the fufpended cadences, and the deceptive, or falfe cadences; the flying cadences may follow as fecond in the fame order, after may be continued the fame order for the divers broken cadences, giving always the preference to the bafs note, which is nearer the fundamental, as it is the third note following the fifth, the feventh, and the other fuperior thirds, by which are broken the perfect cadences; and in this manner the accent cannot be mifplaced.


C H A P.

## C H A P. III.

## Article I. The Divifion of figured Harmony.

HE figured harmony, or common mufic, may be divided, and diftinctly confidered under three different denominations; namely, vocal, inftrumental, and local. Without voices, or inftruments, harmony cannot fubfift. A written compofition of mufic may ferve for the eyes, not for the ears: Confequently the voices and inftruments are the neceffary productions of harmony, bad or good. The vocal mufic may be called natural, becaufe the power of it has been implanted in men by the very fame nature, as mentioned in the beginning of the introduction ; and the inftrumental may be diftinguifhed and called artificial, being invented by art. The local mufic comprehends both rocal and inftrumental feparately, or joined together, efpecially applied to the property, decorum, and 'tafte belonging to the different places in which the mufic is to be performed, as will diftinctly be flewn in its proper place.

## Articie II. Of Vocal Mufic.

WE have juft above mentioned, that the power of finging, cultivating, and performing mulic, has been implanted in men by the very fame nature: But this power was proportioned to the particular conftitution of every one, from whence it happens, that one has a better voice, difpofition, tafte, and more love to mufic than another: Notwithftanding every one poffeffes the fame general power of making mufic with his own voice, bad or good. The mufic produced by a good and proper voice for mufic, is infinitely fuperior to all mufic that may be produced by any inftrument whatfoever ; becaufe the beft inftrument can onty produce founds, but a voice may join his mufical founds to the difcourfe; and when it is properly adapted, both together acquiring an extraordinary power, becomes abfolute arbitrator of the human pafions, and made wonder and miracles as it is reported by fo many old and modern hiftorians. But this power falls very fhort when mufic is not well, and properly applied to the expreflion and renfe of the words; and notwithftanding that the mufic may be compofed by an excellent artift, but indifferently adapted to the words, may be only confidered as fumple inftrumental mufic, fit for pleafure, but not for affecting and moving the human paffions, becaufe the excellence and fuperiority of the vocal mufic confifts only in giving weight to the fpeech, which cannot be done without the excellence of the harmonic art being properly joined to the expreffion of the words; and this (if we will diftinguifh the art) is what may be called the only fcience of mufic: Therefore in this fenfe mufic may be defined a perfect emphatical expreffion produced by an excellent combination of found s and words: Confequently to poffefs this fcience of mufic, it is neceffary not only to poffers perfectly all rules of combinations and progreflions harmonic, but all the different impreffions which may be done to fenfation by the various motions, combinations, and progreffions, gradually, or by fkips; to diftinguifh the propereft airs which are to be applied to the different fenfes, as pathetic, brifk, or languid, in their proper time, flow, or quick; for example, a $1 k i p$ of the fifth high, in quick time, is more proper for fome lively expreffions, than fkipping a fourth low, which is the fame confonant found at the octave low, which akip may better ferve for pathetic and doleful expreffions in flow time: And becaufe the vocal mufic is performed by different voices, as Sopranos, Contraltos, tenors and baffes, every one of which have a different propriety; confequently are not of a little advantage, when it is in the power of the compofer to make choice of the moft proper voice for expreffing different compofitions of the words. The Sopranos being of the acute voice, are the more proper for the quick movements, and thefe for the expreflions, merry and agreeable. The Contraltos having their voices lefs acute, and of fwcet tone, may be imployed in the
pathetic and amorous file, and other flow movements. The Tenor partaking of all particularity of the other voices, may ferve in all gay, brifk, grave, and refolute movements, and particularly in fimple narratives which are done under the terme, or moto andante, by the Italians called arie perlanti; which in Englifl fignifies a manner of fpeaking. The Bafs being a more grave voice, is not proper for quick movements, not in the very adagio pathetic, but in the middle of thofe two extremes, as largo, andante, rifoluto, and ftaccato; the propereft motions of melody for baffes are fkips, alfo by their gradual divifions, or diminutions of notes. To the tenor voice all motions are proper. To the contraltos it is the foftenuto and firm notes, alfo fome few fkips, but not too much diftant in accutenefs or gravity ; on the contrary, the foftenuto, and firm notes, are not proper for the foprano. voice, but the moving and diminifhed notes are more proper. Thefe may ferve for general rules in diftributing the mufic to the voices, which may have fome exceptions on fome occafions. After all that has been faid above, a little knowledge of the art oratoria, or poetica, will certainly be of no little fervice for adapting the propereft founds, fimple or combined, to the various expreffions, as narratives, interrogations, exclamations, lamentations, conclufions, and all other forts of declamations. But at laft the compofer fhould put himfelf into the fame paffion into which he would move his auditors by his compofitions; this may ferve for a general rule to be depended on, becaufe the enumeration of all obfervations in the divers applications of founds in melody, and combined in harmony to the juft expreffion of words, is of fo much extenfion, and fubject to an infinity of diftinctions, all which cannot be compaffed in a moderate face. But every one may take care of knowing them by practice, and by his own private application.

## Article III. Of Inftrumental Mufic.

THE inftrumental mufic cannot pretend to equal the vocal, to which it is only a copy, and a copy in miniature, without any obligation of obferving the rules mentioned in the antecedent article, belonging to the fame vocal mufic, as derived from the fcience fuppofing the art divifible, all expreffions being arbitrary to the compofers: Neverthelefs the inftrumental has an honourable prerogative, having been in fome manner the caufe of the perfection of the vocal. With only the voice, and without inftruments, it would have been almoft impoffible, not only to compofe a perfect fcale of mufical founds, but alfo of repeating a like found which fome time before was pronounced; becaufe founds are fimple fenfations, produced by the motion of the air, which vanifhes away, the fenfation alfo ceafing immediately, and the fame fenfation cannot be printed in the memory, but we may have the remembrance of having heard a found, which cannot cafily be repeated in the fame pitch after fome little time paft.

We have feen in the Introduction, that not only the firf Greck poets, but alfo the Roman orator Gracchus, has been obliged to make ufe of inftruments, only to keep the voice in a proper and juft tone. Now notwithftanding at this day the performance in mufic is arrived to its ne plus ultra, it is very difficult to the performers to keep their voice in the fame pitch without inftruments, as has been tried many times by three or four fingers beginning a fong in a fixed pitch, following finging without inftruments; after the fpace of three or four minutes, in founding the firf pitch, they find the voices all fall down into the grave, and that in proportion to the quantity of time they continued finging. But not only the vocal mufic in particular is obliged to the inftruments, but the whole harmonic art, it being evident, that without a perfect fcale of founds, the melody hould have continued in its imperfect beginning, and the harmony never fhould have been producted; being more than probable that neither Guido nor others thould have been capable of finding out the fimple beginning of harmony without the help of the organ, the performance of which has been known not only ly the fame Guido, but alfo by others before him. All that is admirable in the ordinary difpofition and oeconomy of providential nature, which has given to men the power of poriucing and cultivating mufic, and to the fame power has joined fome particular inftinets
inftincts for invening inftruments to imitate the human voice in finging, without thefe inflincts mufic fhould never have ripened to perfection. Now returning to the performance of inftrumental mufic.

The compofer is abfolute mafter of chufing what melody or harmony he pleafes, but always rigoroully obferving the laws or rules of the harmonic art. The inftrumental mufic being fit only for pleafure, as before-faid, and not having nccafion of fome greateft performance, as the vocal mufic, confequently it requires not a fupreme flill in the harmonic art; the more fimple it is compofed, the better it pleafes the public. A good melody, carried in four, or not more than five real parts, makes a better effect than full harmony, in which muft neceffarily be employed a prodigious quantity of performers for its good effect. The harmonic progreffion of an allegro, when it is the more fimple and natural, is beft received by the public, as may be oblerved in the compofitions of many of the beft authors. The allegro, and alfo all quick movements, are not capable of uncommon combination of founds, as thofe which by Italians are called acciacatures, there may better ferve in the grave and flow movements. All melody allegro, grave, or pathetic, may be partaking a little of the tafte of thofe which ferve for dances, and thofe are the moft pleafant to the public; as for example, the movements of jig, borree, correntes, for the brifk and lively; of ficilianes farabandas for the adagio, or affetuofo; and of minuetios for the allegro gratiofo. Here muft be remembred what has been before-mentioned in regard of the divers terms added to the compofitions, and particularly of the term allegro, which generally is very little underftood, being confidered as of quick and lively movement, but is very different; this term allegro regards the manner of exprefling the notes, but not to the meafure of the time; and when the faid term allegro is only put, it muft be underftood as in common time, or, as it is called by the Italians, a giufto time, with the expreffion merry, but not brifk: The fame of the other terms, as gratiofo, amorofo, vivace, fpiritofo, andante, and fuch other like, all which regard only the expreffion of mufic; only the term prefto, and adagio, and giufto time, regard the meafure of time; and the term grave regards both for the expreffion and time, as adagio with an expreffion grave. It muft alfo be obferved, that the inftrumental mufic may be performed not only for public or private diverfion, but alfo in the church, as betwixt fome pfalms, or other vocal performances; in which cafe the inftrumental muft be compofed in the teft proper to the decorum of the facred place: For doing this it will be ufeful to look into the compofitions of thofe authors who have compofed concertos and fonates proper for the church: It mult alfo be obferved, that the inftrumental mulic for thurches may be compofed with a greater and more full harmony, being moft proper for the grave and majeftic, which is indifpenfible in all churches. But this is not proper when the mufic is not deftined for churches. The more fimple mufic, with a pleafant melody, as before-mentioned, is always the beft for public and particular diverfions, conforming to what may pleafe the public, which ordinarily are ignorant of the harmonic art ; and notwithftanding all pretend to be not only lovers of mufic, but alfo connoiffeurs therein, it frequently happens, that the learned and acquainted with the fame art, which are generally the leffer number of the affembly, find themfelves obliged to follow the greateft part of the audience.

## Article IV. Of local Mufic; and, firft, of facred Mufc.

THE Compofition of mufic muft be always done not only according to the quantity and ability of the performers, and to the genius and general tafte of the country, but alfo to the propriety of the different places where it is to be performed, is church, heroic, and comic theatrical mufic, and chamber mufic, which are all comprehended under the title of local mufic. Every one of the above linds of mufic have fome different peculiar rules to be obferved, befides the common rules of harmony:

Sacred mufic in the greateft churches, particularly of the Roman and Ambrofian communion in Italy and in Germany, as metropolitans, cathedrals, and colleges, is commonly divided in ferial or coral, in fimple and double feftivals and folemn. The coral or ferial in fimple canto fermo, as it is called, is performed on every common day called ferie, by all the affiftants to the great choir of the church, as canons, chaplains, and prebendaries. The fimple feftival is fo called, when on fome ferial day happens the commemoration of a common faint ; and the prayers, pfalms, $\mathcal{E}^{\circ} c$. are fung partly by the affiftants of the great choir, as above, in canto fermo, and partly by muficians in canto Gregoriano harmonized, in three, four, or more parts. The double feftival is performed in figured mufic, almoft all the prayers by muficians, with the addition of one motteto for one, two, or more voices, in commemoration of the particular faint ; and the folemn mufic is practifed in almoft all the churches on the occafion of fome particular great. feaft, as for thankfoiving to the Almighty with a folemn $\mathcal{T}_{e}$ Deum, being a devout and religious cuftom for fome public remarkable fuccefs, or for the dedication and confecration of the church, or on fome other great occafions, in which the compofition and performance of mufic is done in the moft folemn manner poffible. To this great and folemn mufic may be added fome facred poetic compofitions, commonly called oratorios, the mufic of which is ordinarily performed by only four, five, or fix voices, with a number of inftruments of all forts, in a majeftic manner. Thefe oratorios are compofed for a feaft of fome particular faint, and particularly for the folemuity of Cbriftmas-day. Thefe performances are continued for nine fucceffive evenings before the day of the feaft, or for eight fucceffive evenings after the fame feaft. The compofition of thefe kinds of mufic are not obliged fo rigoroufly to keep their melody and harmony in a grave order, though very modeft and more natural; but they may be compofed in a way more free and expreflive, not only in the compofition of the diverfe recitatives, but alfo of airs and choruffes, which ordinarily are compoled in a manner called madrigal; notwithftanding all muft be regulated to the decorum of the facred place, particularly in the melody of airs, which muft always be very far from the tafte of the dance; except the mufic compofed for the folemn day of Clbiftmas, and its novenes or octaves, in which may be introduced fome fong, air or chorufes, compofed with the melodies in imitation of fome dances commonly played by bagpipes, as it is generally the cuftom in Roman churches, expreffing in that manner the mirth and chearfulnefs of the fhepherds in receiving the annuntiation of the nativity of the Mefliah, and by this remembrance a particular devotion is promoted in the congregation.

The particular rules for the application of the harmony convenient to the church, feem that by the fame name of church mufic, there may be enough explained, and by all compofers be well underfood. Every one knows that the church mufic is imployed in finging hymns and pfalms to the Almighty, begging help, grace, pardon, $\mathfrak{E} c$. for all the congregation, confequently mufic being as a deputed orator, muft be correfpondent to the above ends, and at the fame time proper for promoting an humble affurance and devout hope, with a perfect contrition among the congregated faithful. All this muft be always prefent to the compofer in compofing church mufic, choofing the propereft harmony to be applyed to the divers fignifications of hymns, pfalms, $\mathcal{E} c$. which harmony, as before-faid, muft always be grave, but humble and modeft; therefore the combination of founds mult be the more natural, alfo the progreffion or modulation, wirhout waving from one fcale or mode to another, but only paffing by the more natural fcales, and not frequently; avoiding in this manner all ftrong expreffions, being directly contrary to the modefty, the humility, and to the neceffary reverence of the facred place; and as the principal rule of all abovenientioned, not only the fenfe of the words, but alfo their pronunciation, muft be clearly and diftinctly perceived, this rule belonging in common to the compofers and the fingers, which in this particular the fimple fucceflive notes muft not be altered, but clearly pronounced, and in the beft but fimple manner in regard to the expreffion of the words, without flourifhing graces, which are all impertinent and indecent in facred mufic: But this rule is the moft neglefted both by the fingers as well as the compofers; every one is poffeffed with an itching humour of difplaying his good tafte, the mafters in their compofitions, and the
performers in finging, without confideration to the juft and eafy pronunciation of the words, in a manner that the words become only fubfervient to the mufic, when it is the mufic that ought to be fubfervient to the words; and this is the moft neceflary rule in all forts of vocal mufic.

The mafters take care of compofing the moft fudious and laborious pieces, of mufic, full of fugues, imitations, contrafugues, double fugues mixed with fimple and double contrapoint, with many long contiles, or divifions, and fuperfluous repetitions of words and mufical paffages, but notwithftanding that the harmony may be excellent, and very well adapted to the fenfe of the words, yet in the fame inftant of being performed the fame good application of the compofition muft be deftroyed, when the pronunciation of the words is confounded by three, four, or more voices, by which every one pronounces different fyllables and words. This is the greateft and moft fcandalous error which has been in vogue from the fifteenth century to this very day. The practice of fimple and double contrapoint, with all kinds of fugues, canons, ©cc. are not only the beft, but alfo the neceffary means to attain the perfect knowledge of all forts of combinations of founds, and their different progreffions, as mentioned before; and the above fugues, imitations, $\xi^{\circ} c$. may be practifed in public by the inftrumental mufic; but generally for the vocal, as efpecially in facred mufic, all the above forts of compofitions feem to be very improper and indecent, for the reafon of the great difficulty of making them without confounding the words. Sometimes the fugues and imitations may be ufed in the word Amen, or Allelujab, becaufe all the fenfe is comprifed in one fimple word, confequently it is underfood by the firft pronunciation; but care muft be taken to keep fhort the fubject and its progreffion, avoiding always the repetition of the fame word as much as poffible, alfo the long contilenes or divifions, compofed and performed for and by a fimple vowel, both thefe infignificant repetitions and long contilenes being very indecent and irreverent in facred mufic. The repetition of words becomes fometimes proper for a greater expreffion, particularly in begging pardon, grace, or for fome admirations of the divine providence, but muft be ufed very difcreetly. All thefe faults will furely be avoided if the mafter in compofing facred mufic will imagine himfelf to be prefent before God, as a profound humble fupplicant, praying for grace, or forgivenefs of his fins, or other like, conformable to the words to be harmonized ; and in this manner he will find the propereft expreflions from the general combination of founds, and their progreffion to be applied in every fort of church mufic, particularly for the chorufes, which for the beft, muft be fyllabic, all performers finging and pronouncing the fame fyllables, which performers may be divided into two, or four churches, when they are enough for a folemn mufic: From this divifion, the two or four chorufes finging fometimes all together, and fometimes alternately, in the order of their chorufes, arifes fome variety, which may be alfo adapted to the fenfe of the words: Moreover there may be compofed, in the middle of fome chorufes, a verfe for eight or ten fingers, all finging together at the unifons, as fupranos or contraltos, in a little chorus, accompanied with the organ at the unifon of the voices, or with the immoveable fundamental bafs in the pedal; without other accord, ferving for keeping in tone the voices, which is extremely pleafant, when it is in a proper place; and when the vocal is joined with the inftrumental, a greater diverfity may be introduced by fome divers melody for the inftrumental not conformable to that of the vocal, as fome fugues, or immitations to be performe.. by the inftrumental for the fame time that all the finging parts proceed with their fyllabic harmony; which manner makes an admirable effect, as I have obferved in a folemn compofition of a credo performed by a great number of fingers, and all forts of inftruments, in which performance all inftruments playing a proper melody in fugue in fix real parts, accompanying in this manner the fyllabic harmony of the fingers till the verfe paffes fub Pontio Pilato; for which was changed the firft harmony, and a grave one, and very pathetic was adapted, and after in the following article the refurrexit, was repeated the firft fubject in the fame manner of the beginning by all chorufes, and continued to the end ; and was all performed in a very little time, being deprived of all unmeaning repetitions, and tirefome contilencs or divifions.

## Article V. Of Theatrical Heroic Muffc.

THeatrical performances have been introduced for reprefenting to the public, and exalting with praifes, the heroic actions of fome great man, and by this means to ftimulate the audience, and particularly the young people, to a ftrong love of virtue and noble actions ; confequently the theatre was formerly a pleafant and diverting fchool of morals. But this fchool has been drawn very far from its original defign. The caufe of this alteration is not fo eafy to determine. It may be fuppofed that the inconftancy of time, which continually metamorphofes every thing, has changed the firt fettlement of virtue (modefly fpeaking) in a fimple divertifement: But that is a general caufe, which comprehends many others immediate and particular; the principal of which feems to be the infipidity of the very fame performance, which alfo may be derived from other caufes, as from the particular negligence or ignorance of the compofers of poetry or mufic ; it being evident, that without a good and proper piece of poetry a moving mufic cannot be done; and the moft excellent piece of poetry may be deftroyed by a bad compofition of mufic: Alfo the difficulty of uniting a proper company of good actors and fingers, which is the caufe that in an opera compofed by a perfect mafer fcarce is to be found a moving air or recitativo; to which may be added the little recompence done to the compofers, being ordinarily an inferior actor preferred to the compofer. All the above chain of caufes have changed theatrical performances from their firf inftitution into a fimple cover to many other diverfions, confequently is not now any more the cafe of compofing a perfect moving piece of mufic. Therefore the compofer of mufic has nothing more to do, than to look over the poetic piece to be fet to mufic, and to take an exact information of the abilities of the actors in their manner of finging and acting, for compofing the mufic proper to their particular abilities. The mafter, in compofing the mufic, muft remember that it is to be performed by memory, confequently the melody of the airs, alfo the recitativo, or recital pieces, muft be cafy, particularly in their progreffions or modulations, paffing into the more natural fcales, relative to the principal, chufing the melody moft appropriated to the fenfe of the words, and particularly the moft capable of a clear and diftinct pronunciation of their fyllables. The invention of the melody to the different airs muft be varied one from another, but always in a manner fuitable to the fenfe of the words; and in refpect to the recital part, it muft be done in an acurate manner, as in fpeaking, but finging ; which recitativos muft alfo be varied one from the other, in a manner that when the fame accord of founds happen to be repeated, it muft be inverted in another manner, the hearing often an accord falling in a like manner, as many compofers do, without regard to the neceflary variety of the mufic being very difagreeable: Alfo the end of all recitativos muft be conformable to the fcale of the following air, when its fenfe has relation to the antecedent recitativo. But when the air, as it fometime happens, changes the fenfe of the words from allegro to pathetic, or, vice verfa, may be pafled in a ftranger fcale, but proper to the expreffion of the words, notwithftanding that the fcalc may be improper to the antecedent fcale of the recitativo, obferving always (as before-faid) to give the proper expreffion with the compofition of the mufic, but in an eafy manner, not only for fake of the memory, but alfo becaufe the greater expreffion muft be compleated by the action of the finger, which action may be leffened when the finger is obliged to be attentive to a hard piece of mufic. Alfo it inuft be obferved in compofing airs of fome feccial paffions, always to chufe the beft actor when poffible; becaufe very often the compofer is obliged to give the part of the greater expreffion to a bad actor for being the beft finger, or for being protected by fome gentleman of authority; and this is another caufe of the juft negligence of the comporers, who will not undertake an unfruitful trouble; it being evident that expreffion only may change the beft mufic into one very bad; but a proper mufic, when it is well expeffed, produces a wonderful good effect, as I have obferved on divers occafions, and particularly in the opera called La Merope, fet to mufic the firt time in Italy by the famous Gafferimi, where in one' recitativo without informents, fong by Moope and her
fon, which with a feigned name, appearing as a Aranger meffenger to give the falte account of having feen his fon affaflinated, and before he expired, having prayed him to kifs, in his name, the hand of the queen Merope his mother, to this purpofe, being come to the court : But fhe, from fome internal emotion, by which fhe wâs furprized at the firft feeing him, fuppofing her own fon a long time dead, and confequently her fame prefent fon a flranger, and the affaffin of him. This recitativo was full of interrogations, redargutions, exclama-. tions, and other like fort of moving and ftrong expreffions, with the mufic and the action fo well adapted, that the crouded affembly were all fo affected as to fhed tears. Here, in London, in the opera of Coriolanus, the mufic compofed by Attilio Ariofi, at the fcene of the prifon, performed by Senefina, all the affembly was abforbed in extreme attention and profound filence. Therefore it is evident, that theatrical performances may be reftored to its firft inftitution by the contrary means by which it was deftroyed, namely, by a good piece of poetry, expreffive mufic, and proper actors.

## Article VI. Of Theatrical Comic Mufic.

THE comic mufic was formerly introduced between the theatrical ferious heroic mufic, as for a little merry diverfion. It was performed by a comic finger, as fellow-fervant to one of the principal parts. Now this ufe is paft, and inftead of it, there has been introduced fome comical compofitions performed by two fingers, as before, for diverfion, betwixt the feveral acts of the heroic opera; and thefe comical compofitions are called intermedia, which contains fome ridiculous and merry fubjects, totally feparated from the principal fubject of the whole opera. This comical mufic muft be very eafy, and not obliged to the rigorous meafure of time, to the end, that the fingers in charging their proper action, and the expreffions of the words, may move the fpectators to laughter. The invention of the melody muft be proper for it. Not all compofers have a proper tafte for this kind of mufic : One may be excellent in all other branches of vocal mufic ; but in comic mufic his imagination cannot fubminiftrate to him an adequate invention to the comical fubject ; therefore, the looking into fome of thefe forts of compofitions will be of good ufe, and of better ufe in framing them, when it is poffible, that will fuggeft to his own imagination fome like inventions.

## Article VII. Of Cbamber Mufic.

THE chamber mufic may be diftinguifhed in three different forts, namely, vocal, with inftruments, and vocal; without inftruments, and fimple inftrumental.

The vocal compofitions, with inftruments, are near the fame as the oratorios; only the melody is not fubjected to neceffary local devotion and reverence; alfo the harmony, particularly in the recitative part, which muft be very expreffive, and much varied, and confequently it is more liberty to the compofer, who may difplay their good tafte without being perplexed by particular rules. This fort of mufic is ordinarily called, in Italian, ferenate, confifting of fix, eight, or more airs, with recitativoes, performed by four, five, or fix of the beft fingers, accompanied by many of the beft and propereft forts of inftruments, and are performed in fome great houfes, as of kings, princes, and eminent lords, and ordinarily, in fummer time, in the gardens (from whence is derived the name of ferenata, as played in an open ferene place) on occafion of fome nativity, or marriage of princeffes and great lords, or other folemn rejoicing. The compofition muft be very majeftic, but merry, and with the beft and greateft, or full harmony. The majefty of the compofion may be expreffed by the vocal parts, particularly in the different melodic chorufes; and the melody of the inftrument may be merry, with flourifhing and diminifhed notes, or with different fubjects united to the vocal melody, or by way of contract in the beft manner, all applicable to the fenfe and pronunciation of the words, taking care that the inftrumental may not deftroy, but help the vocal in the expreffion of the words, and their fyllables; this being a
general and indifpenfable rule for all the vocal mufic joined with the inftrumental. In regard of the recitative, when the vocal part cannot be affifted by the inftrumental in the expreflion of the fenfe, as ordinarily happens, in this cafe the compofer muft give all the more moving expreflion in the compofition of the vocal with the propereft and moft moving harmonic combinations of founds in their proper progreffion, by which the finger may have the beft expreffion.

The fimple vocal without inftruments is only ufed in Italy, and very feldom in other countries; and it is ufed in fome particular affemblies of lords and ladies, who pafs the long winier evenings in finging fome cantatas or duettos, only with the harpfichord and violoncello, when the reft of the affembly pafs the time in playing at cards or otherwife. Thefe cantatas are performed only by the ladies of quality, and fometimes by fome young lords, in which affembly are not admitted the profeffors of mufic, but only fome ftranger of the beft fort, and that but very feldom. This fimple vocal mufic is of the beft fort, compofed by the beft poets, and mafters of mufic; and fometimes by the fame lords the poetry and mufic, or alfo the mufic by the ladies, among whom are many not only excellent fingers, but alfo compofers. Thefe fort of compofitions being deprived of the help of the infrumental, and of all action, confequently there muft be ufed all the moft expreffive combinations, and propereft progreffions, in compofing not only the recitative part, but alfo the airs; the melody of which muft be extremely proper to the fenfe of the words: The bafs for the violoncello, when it is feparated from that of the harpfichord, muft be compofed in the beft and moft melodious manner, by imitation, or fome different melody, proper to help the expreflion of the vocal part: The harmony of the harpfichord, particularly in pathetic airs and recitativos, muft be in as full combination as poffible, with its accicaturas, more proper for the Atrongeft expreffion. Thefe cantatas are very ftudious, and give the greateft pleafure with their moving affections: But in fome ordinary cantatas, a voice fola, compofed by an indifferent poetic fyle, the mufic cannot be of the moving fort, but only proper to the infignificant fenfe of the poetry; and thefe fort of cantatas are thofe which commonly run in every country, but the beft fort very feldom, becaufe the perfons keep them zealoully clofe for their own ufe.

The fimple inftrumental chamber mufic comprehends all forts of inftrumental mufic, and fometimes intermixed with fome favourite air or fong of fome opera; and this happens in almoft all the countries of Europe, and it is often performed in public affemblies; excepting in Italy, where all forts of chamber mufic are performed in private, and in thofe particular affemblies of young gentlemen, where the inftrumental mufic is practifed for pleafure and for practice, every one, who is capable of compofing, expofes their mufical compofitions, which are almoft all compofed for the violino, flute, or oboe folo, or in concertos with a principal inftrumental part accompanied by the other inftruments; and never, or very feldom, is performed any printed mufic, excepting fome concertos, when they newly appear in public, every affembly being provided with many particular manufcript mufic.

The inftrumental mufic is only fubject to the general rules of harmony, and to that of pleafing, and the beft are thofe which pleafes the moft and are beft approved by the public.

Thefe are all the particular rules which may belong to the different vocal, inftrumental, and local mufic, as are expreffed in the articles of the prefent laft chapter, which puts an end to the whole treatife of the harmonic art, or compofition of mufic.

$$
\begin{array}{llll}
\end{array}
$$



$$
-2+\frac{1}{2}+\frac{1}{2}
$$

$$
\ldots+1
$$


[^0]:    P A G. 12, at the begining of line 3, for Melody read Harmony.
    Pag. 14, line 10, for Lais read Laxis.
    Pag. 32, Example vii. for Plate 8, read 9.
    Pag. 40, line 7, of Article v. for as the falfe fifth, read bas the falfe fifth.
    Pag. 48, for Article iv. read iii.
    Pag. 72, line 5, add, after defcending continually, by fifths.
    Pag. 82, Article $v$, for fame read fome.

[^1]:    His quoque pogremis temporibus, fcilicet, Benedicti Octavi Papa, Guidus Aretinus Profeffione Monacus, Muficus infignis innotuit, qui, maxima omnium admiratione, novam addifcendi Mufcam rationem invenit ; ita ut puer paucis menfibus difceret, quod pluribus annis vix bomo quilibet, pollens ingenio, ante capere potuiffet, qua etiam de Caufa Romam vocatus sft ab codem Benedicte Pontifice, poftea vero Foanne vigefimo Benedieti Succeffore anno atatis

[^2]:    Third N.B. When in the beginning of a compofition next the key, is found a diefes, in Englifl called a fharp, this diefes, or fharp, augments a femitone all notes comprehending its octaves grave and acute, which belong to the fame place where the diefes is put; and when it happens in the courfe of the compofition to augment the fame notes of another femitone higher, is put this mark ( x ) called improperly diefes enharmonic, but better in Englifl, extreme fharp, as mentioned in article VIII. chap. VI. likewife the b mole, which diminifhes the natural note of a femitone, when this $b$ mole, or flat, is put at the beginning of the compofition next the key, in this cafe, another b flat being put to the note, which has the flat at the key, the fame note muft be diminifhed another femitone; as for example, the fign $b$, in the place of the found called B natural, at the key, all the notes of

